

AN  
OLD ENGLISH  
GRAMMAR AND EXERCISE BOOK

WITH

INFLECTIONS, SYNTAX, SELECTIONS FOR  
READING, AND GLOSSARY

BY

C. ALPHONSO SMITH, A.M., PH.D.  
PROFESSOR OF ENGLISH IN THE LOUISIANA STATE UNIVERSITY

**Boston**  
ALLYN AND BACON  
1896

COPYRIGHT, 1896, BY  
C ALPHONSO SMITH.

Norwood Press  
J S Cushing & Co - Berwick & Smith  
Norwood Mass U S A

## PREFACE.

---

THE scope of this book is indicated in § 5. It is intended for beginners, and in writing it, these words of Sir Thomas Elyot have not been forgotten: "Grammer, beinge but an introduction to the understandinge of autors, if it be made to longe or exquisite to the lerner, it in a maner mortifieth his corage: And by that time he cometh to the most swete and pleasant redinge of olde autors, the sparkes of fervent desire of lernynge are extinete with the burdone of grammer, lyke as a lyttell fyre is some quenched with a great heape of small stickes." — *The Governour*, Cap. X.

Only the essentials, therefore, are treated in this work, which is planned more as a foundation for the study of Modern English grammar, of historical English grammar, and of the principles of English etymology, than as a general introduction to Germanic philology.

The Exercises in translation will, it is believed, furnish all the drill necessary to enable the student to retain the forms and constructions given in the various chapters.

The Selections for Reading relate to the history and literature of King Alfred's day, and are sufficient to give the student a first-hand, though brief, acquaintance with the native style and idiom of Early West Saxon prose in its golden age. Most of the words and constructions contained in them will be already familiar to the student through their intentional employment in the Exercises.

For the inflectional portion of this grammar, recourse

has been had chiefly to Sievers' *Abriss der angelsächsischen Grammatik* (1895). Constant reference has been made also to the same author's earlier and larger *Angelsächsische Grammatik*, translated by Cook. A more sparing use has been made of Cosijn's *Altwestsächsische Grammatik*.

For syntax and illustrative sentences, Dr. J. E. Wülfing's *Syntax in den Werken Alfreds des Grossen, Part I.* (Bonn, 1894) has proved indispensable. Advance sheets of the second part of this great work lead one to believe that when completed the three parts will constitute the most important contribution to the study of English syntax that has yet been made. Old English sentences have also been cited from Sweet's *Anglo-Saxon Reader*, Bright's *Anglo-Saxon Reader*, and Cook's *First Book in Old English*.

The short chapter on the Order of Words has been condensed from my *Order of Words in Anglo-Saxon Prose* (Publications of the Modern Language Association of America, New Series, Vol. I, No. 2).

Though assuming sole responsibility for everything contained in this book, I take pleasure in acknowledging the kind and efficient assistance that has been so generously given me in its preparation. To none do I owe more than to Dr. J. E. Wülfing, of the University of Bonn; Prof. James A. Harrison, of the University of Virginia; Prof. W. S. Currell, of Washington and Lee University; Prof. J. Douglas Bruce, of Bryn Mawr College; and Prof. L. M. Harris, of the University of Indiana. They have each rendered material aid, not only in the tedious task of detecting typographical errors in the proof-sheets, but by the valuable criticisms and suggestions which they have made as this work was passing through the press.

C. ALPHONSO SMITH.

LOUISIANA STATE UNIVERSITY,  
BATON ROUGE, September, 1896.

# TABLE OF CONTENTS.



## PART I.—INTRODUCTION.

| Chapters                                     | Pages |
|--|-------|
| I. History (§ 1-5) . . . . .                 | 1     |
| II. Sounds (§ 6-11). . . . .                 | 4     |
| III. Inflections (§ 12-19) . . . . .         | 10    |
| IV. Order of Words (§ 20-21). . . . .        | 18    |
| V. Practical Suggestions (§ 22-24) . . . . . | 21    |

## PART II.—ETYMOLOGY AND SYNTAX.

|   |    |
|---|----|
| VI. The <b>a</b> -Declension: Masculine <b>a</b> -Stems (§ 25-30) . . . . .   | 27 |
| VII. Neuter <b>a</b> -Stems (§ 31-36) . . . . .                               | 30 |
| VIII. The <b>ō</b> -Declension (§ 37-42) . . . . .                            | 33 |
| IX. The <b>i</b> -Declension and the <b>u</b> -Declension (§ 43-55) . . . . . | 35 |
| X. Present Indicative Endings of Strong Verbs (§ 56-62) . . . . .             | 39 |
| XI. The Weak or <b>n</b> -Declension (§ 63-66) . . . . .                      | 44 |
| XII. Remnants of Other Consonant Declensions (§ 67-71) . . . . .              | 47 |
| XIII. Pronouns (§ 72-77) . . . . .  | 50 |
| XIV. Adjectives, Strong and Weak (§ 78-87). . . . .                           | 53 |
| XV. Numerals (§ 88-92) . . . . .  | 57 |
| XVI. Adverbs, Prepositions, and Conjunctions (§ 93-95) . . . . .              | 60 |
| XVII. Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs (§ 96-100) . . . . .               | 64 |
| XVIII. Strong Verbs: Class I, Syntax of Moods (§ 101-108) . . . . .           | 68 |
| XIX. Classes II and III (§ 109-113) . . . . .                                 | 74 |

| Chapters   | Pages |
|--|-------|
| XX. Classes IV, V, VI, and VII; Contract Verbs (§ 114-121) . . . . .   | 78    |
| XXI. Weak Verbs (§ 122-133) . . . . .  | 82    |
| XXII. Remaining Verbs; Verb-Phrases with <b>habban</b> , <b>bēon</b> ,<br>and <b>weorðan</b> (§ 134-143) . . . . . | 90    |

### PART III.—SELECTIONS FOR READING.

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Introductory . . . . .                             | 98  |
| I. The Battle of Ashdown . . . . .                 | 99  |
| II. A Prayer of King Alfred . . . . .              | 101 |
| III. The Voyages of Ohthere and Wulfstan . . . . . | 102 |
| Ohthere's First Voyage . . . . .                   | 103 |
| Ohthere's Second Voyage . . . . .                  | 106 |
| Wulfstan's Voyage . . . . .                        | 107 |

### GLOSSARIES.

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| I. Old English—Modern English . . . . .  | 111 |
| II. Modern English—Old English . . . . . | 125 |

# OLD ENGLISH GRAMMAR AND EXERCISE BOOK.



## PART I.



### INTRODUCTION.



#### CHAPTER I.

##### HISTORY.

1. The history of the English language falls naturally into three periods; but these periods blend into one another so gradually that too much significance must not be attached to the exact dates which scholars, chiefly for convenience of treatment, have assigned as their limits. Our language, it is true, has undergone many and great changes; but its continuity has never been broken, and its individuality has never been lost.

2. The first of these periods is that of OLD ENGLISH, or ANGLO-SAXON,<sup>1</sup> commonly known as the period of *full*

---

<sup>1</sup> This unfortunate nomenclature is due to the term *Angli Saxones*, which Latin writers used as a designation for the English Saxons as distinguished from the continental or Old Saxons. But Alfred and Ælfric both use the term *Englisc*, not Anglo-Saxon. The Angles spread over Northumbria and Mercia, far outnumbering the other tribes. Thus *Englisc* (= *Angel + isc*) became the general name for the language spoken.

*inflections.* *E.g.* **stān-as**, *stones*; **car-u**, *care*; **will-a**, *will*; **bind-an**, *to bind*; **help-að** (= **ath**), *they help*.

It extends from the arrival of the English in Great Britain to about one hundred years after the Norman Conquest, —from A.D. 449 to 1150; but there are no literary remains of the earlier centuries of this period. There were four<sup>1</sup> distinct dialects spoken at this time. These were the Northumbrian, spoken north of the river Humber; the Mercian, spoken in the midland region between the Humber and the Thames; the West Saxon, spoken south and west of the Thames; and the Kentish, spoken in the neighborhood of Canterbury. Of these dialects, Modern English is most nearly akin to the Mercian; but the best known of them is the West Saxon. It was in the West Saxon dialect that King Alfred (849–901) wrote and spoke. His writings belong to the period of Early West Saxon as distinguished from the period of Late West Saxon, the latter being best represented in the writings of Abbot Ælfric (955?–1025?).

**3.** The second period is that of MIDDLE ENGLISH, or the period of *leveled inflections*, the dominant vowel of the inflections being **e**. *E.g.* **ston-es**, **car-e**, **will-e**, **bind-en** (or **bind-e**), **help-eth**, each being, as in the earlier period, a dissyllable.

The Middle English period extends from A.D. 1150 to 1500. Its greatest representatives are Chaucer (1340–1400) in poetry and Wiclif (1324–1384) in prose. There were three prominent dialects during this period: the Northern, corresponding to the older Northumbrian; the Midland

---

<sup>1</sup> As small as England is, there are six distinct dialects spoken in her borders to-day. Of these the Yorkshire dialect is, perhaps, the most peculiar. It preserves many Northumbrian survivals. See Tennyson's *Northern Farmer*.



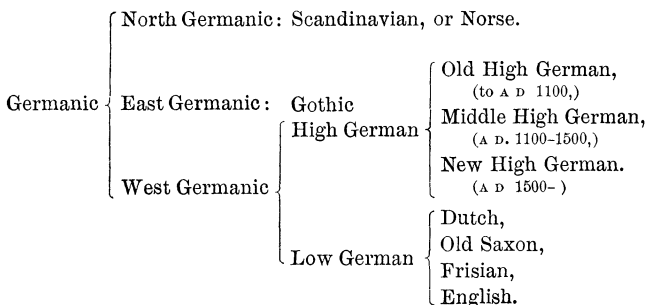
(divided into East Midland and West Midland), corresponding to the Mercian; and the Southern, corresponding to the West Saxon and Kentish. London, situated in East Midland territory, had become the dominant speech center; and it was this East Midland dialect that both Chaucer and Wiclif employed.

NOTE.— It is a great mistake to think that Chaucer shaped our language from crude materials. His influence was conservative, not plastic. The popularity of his works tended to crystalize and thus to perpetuate the forms of the East Midland dialect, but that dialect was ready to his hand before he began to write. The speech of London was, in Chaucer's time, a mixture of Southern and Midland forms, but the Southern forms (survivals of the West Saxon dialect) had already begun to fall away; and this they continued to do, so that "Chaucer's language," as Dr. Murray says, "is more Southern than standard English eventually became." See also Morsbach, *Ueber den Ursprung der neuenglischen Schriftsprache* (1888).

4. The last period is that of MODERN ENGLISH, or the period of *lost inflections*. *E.g. stones, care, will, bind, help*, each being a monosyllable. Modern English extends from A.D. 1500 to the present time. It has witnessed comparatively few grammatical changes, but the vocabulary of our language has been vastly increased by additions from the classical languages. Vowels, too, have shifted their values.

5. It is the object of this book to give an elementary knowledge of Early West Saxon prose, or the language of King Alfred. With this knowledge, it will not be difficult for the student to read Late West Saxon, or any other dialect of the Old English period. Such knowledge will also serve as the best introduction to the structure both of Middle English and of Modern English, besides laying a secure foundation for the scientific study of any other Germanic tongue.

NOTE. — The Germanic, or Teutonic, languages constitute a branch of the great Aryan, or Indo-Germanic (known also as the Indo-European) group. They are subdivided as follows:



## CHAPTER II.

### SOUNDS.

#### Vowels and Diphthongs.

6. The long vowels and diphthongs will in this book be designated by the macron (¯). Vowel length should in every case be associated by the student with each word learned: quantity alone sometimes distinguishes words meaning wholly different things: *fōr*, *he went*, *for*, *for*; *gōd*, *good*, *god*, *God*; *mān*, *crime*, *man*, *man*.

Long vowels and diphthongs:

ā as in father: *stān*, *a stone*

ǣ as in man (prolonged): *slǣpan*, *to sleep*.

ē as in they: *hēr*, *here*.

ī as in machine: *mīn*, *mine*

ō as in note (pure, not diphthongal): *bōc*, *book*.

**ū** as in rule: **tūn**, *town*.

**ȳ** as in German *grün*, or English *green* (with lips rounded):<sup>1</sup> **brȳd**,  
*bride*.

The diphthongs, long and short, have the stress upon the first vowel. The second vowel is obscured, and represents approximately the sound of *er* in *sooner*, *faster* (= *soon-uh*, *fast-uh*). The long diphthongs (**ǣ** is not a diphthong proper) are **ēo**, **īe**, and **ēa**. The sound of **ēo** is approximately reproduced in *mayor* (= *mā-uh*); that of **īe** in the dissyllabic pronunciation of *fear* (= *fē-uh*). But **ēa** = *ē-uh*. This diphthong is hardly to be distinguished from *ea* in *pear*, *bear*, etc., as pronounced in the southern section of the United States (= *bæ-uh*, *pæ-uh*).

**7.** The short sounds are nothing more than the long vowels and diphthongs shortened; but the student must at once rid himself of the idea that Modern English *red*, for example, is the shortened form of *reed*, or that *mat* is the shortened form of *mate*. Pronounce these long sounds with increasing rapidity, and *reed* will approach *rid*, while *mate* will approach *met*. The Old English short vowel sounds are:

**a** as in *artistic*: **habban**, *to have*.

**æ** as in *mankind*: **dæg**, *day*

**e, ē** as in *let*: **stelan**, *to steal*, **seġttan**, *to set*.

**i** as in *sit*: **hit**, *it*.

**o** as in *broad* (but shorter): **god**, *God*.

**ō** as in *not*: **lōmb**, *lamb*.

**u** as in *full*: **sunu**, *son*.

**y** as in *müller* (with lips rounded): **gylden**, *golden*.

---

<sup>1</sup> Vowels are said to be round, or rounded, when the lip-opening is rounded; that is, when the lips are thrust out and puckered as if

NOTE. — The symbol **ę** is known as *umlaut-e* (§ 58). It stands for Germanic *a*, while **e** (without the cedilla) represents Germanic *e*. The symbol **q** is employed only before **m** and **n**. It, too, represents Germanic *a*. But Alfred writes **manig** or **monig**, *many*; **lamb** or **lomb**, *lamb*; **hand** or **hond**, *hand*, etc. The cedilla is an etymological sign added by modern grammarians.

### Consonants.

8. There is little difference between the values of Old English consonants and those of Modern English. The following distinctions, however, require notice :

The digraph **th** is represented in Old English texts by **ð** and **þ**, no consistent distinction being made between them. In the works of Alfred, **ð** (capital, **Ð**) is the more common : **ðās**, *those*; **ðæt**, *that*; **bindeð**, *he binds*.

The consonant **c** had the hard sound of *k*, the latter symbol being rare in West Saxon : **cyning**, *king*; **cwēn**, *queen*; **cūð**, *known*. When followed by a palatal vowel sound, — *e*, *i*, *æ*, *ea*, *eo*, long or short, — a vanishing *y* sound was doubtless interposed (*cf.* dialectic *k<sup>y</sup>ind* for *kind*). In Modern English the combination has passed into *ch* : **cealc**, *chalk*; **cīdan**, *to chide*; **læce**, *leech*; **cild**, *child*; **cēowan**, *to chew*. This change (*c > ch*) is known as Palatalization. The letter **g**, pronounced as in Modern English *gun*, has also a palatal value before the palatal vowels (*cf.* dialectic *g<sup>y</sup>irl* for *girl*).

The combination **cg**, which frequently stands for **gg**, had probably the sound of *dge* in Modern English *edge* : **ęcg**, *edge*; **sęcgan**, *to say*; **brycg**, *bridge*.

---

preparing to pronounce *w*. Thus *o* and *u* are round vowels: add *-ing* to each, and phonetically you have added *-wing*. *E.g.* *gowing*, *su<sup>w</sup>ing*.

Initial **h** is sounded as in Modern English: **habban**, *to have*; **hālgā**, *saint*. When closing a syllable it has the sound of German *ch*: **slōh**, *he slew*; **hēah**, *high*; **θurh**, *through*.

9. An important distinction is that between voiced (or sonant) and voiceless (or surd) consonants.<sup>1</sup> In Old English they are as follows:

| VOICED                             | VOICELESS                        |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <b>g</b>                           | <b>h, c</b>                      |
| <b>d</b>                           | <b>t</b>                         |
| <b>ð, þ</b> (as in <i>though</i> ) | <b>θ, þ</b> (as in <i>thin</i> ) |
| <b>b</b>                           | <b>p</b>                         |
| <b>f</b> (= <i>v</i> )             | <b>f</b>                         |
| <b>s</b> (= <i>z</i> )             | <b>s</b>                         |

It is evident, therefore, that **ð** (**þ**), **f**, and **s** have double values in Old English. If voiced, they are equivalent to *th* (in *though*), *v*, and *z*. Otherwise, they are pronounced as *th* (in *thin*), *f* (in *fin*), and *s* (in *sin*). The syllabic environment will usually compel the student to give these letters their proper values. When occurring between vowels, they are always voiced: **ōðer**, *other*; **ofer**, *over*; **rīsan**, *to rise*.

NOTE. — The general rule in Old English, as in Modern English, is, that voiced consonants have a special affinity for other voiced consonants, and voiceless for voiceless. This is the law of Assimilation. Thus when *de* is added to form the preterit of a verb whose stem

---

<sup>1</sup> A little practice will enable the student to see the appropriateness of calling these consonants voiced and voiceless. Try to pronounce a voiced consonant, — *d* in *den*, for example, but without the assistance of *en*, — and there will be heard a gurgle, or *vocal* murmur. But in *t*, of *ten*, there is no sound at all, but only a feeling of tension in the organs.

ends in a voiceless consonant, the **d** is unvoiced, or assimilated, to **t**: **seġtan**, to *set*, **seġtte** (but **treġddan**, to *tread*, has **treġdde**); **slæpan**, to *sleep*, **slæpte**; **drencan**, to *drench*, **drencete**; **cyssan**, to *kiss*, **cyste**. See § 126, Note 1.

### Syllables.

**10.** A syllable is usually a vowel, either alone or in combination with consonants, uttered with a single impulse of stress; but certain consonants may form syllables: *oven* (= *ov-n*), *battle* (= *bæt-l*); (cf. also the vulgar pronunciation of *elm*).

A syllable may be (1) weak or strong, (2) open or closed, (3) long or short.

(1) A weak syllable receives a light stress. Its vowel sound is often different from that of the corresponding strong, or stressed, syllable. Cf. weak and strong *my* in “I want my lárge hat” and “I want *mý* hat.”

(2) An open syllable ends in a vowel or diphthong: **dē-man**, to *deem*; **ðū**, *thou*; **sca-can**, to *shake*; **dæ-ges**, *by day*. A closed syllable ends in one or more consonants: **ðing**, *thing*; **gōd**, *good*; **glæd**, *glad*.

(3) A syllable is long (*a*) if it contains a long vowel or a long diphthong: **drī-fan**, to *drive*; **lū-can**, to *lock*; **slæ-pan**, to *sleep*; **cēo-san**, to *choose*; (*b*) if its vowel or diphthong is followed by more than one consonant:<sup>1</sup> **cræft**, *strength*; **heard**, *hard*; **lib-ban**, to *live*; **feal-lan**,

---

<sup>1</sup> Taken separately, every syllable ending in a single consonant is long. It may be said, therefore, that all closed syllables are long; but in the natural flow of language, the single final consonant of a syllable so often blends with a following initial vowel, the syllable thus becoming open and short, that such syllables are not recognized as prevalingly long. Cf. Modern English *at all* (= *a-tall*).

to fall. Otherwise, the syllable is short: **ðe**, *which*; **be-ran**, *to bear*; **ðæt**, *that*; **gie-fan**, *to give*.

NOTE 1. — A single consonant belongs to the following syllable: **hā-lig**, *holy* (not **hāl-ig**); **wri-tan**, *to write*, **fæ-der**, *father*.

NOTE 2. — The student will notice that the syllable may be long and the vowel short; but the vowel cannot be long and the syllable short.

NOTE 3. — Old English short vowels, occurring in open syllables, have regularly become long in Modern English: **we-fan**, *to weave*; **e-tan**, *to eat*; **ma-cian**, *to make*; **na-coð**, *naked*, **a-can**, *to ache*; **o-fer**, *over*. And Old English long vowels, preceding two or more consonants, have generally been shortened: **brēost**, *breast*; **hǣlð**, *health*; **slǣpte**, *slept*; **lǣdde**, *led*.

### Accentuation.

**11.** The accent in Old English falls usually on the radical syllable, never on the inflectional ending: **bríngan**, *to bring*; **stānas**, *stones*; **bérende**, *bearing*; **ídelnes**, *idleness*; **frēondscipe**, *friendship*.

But in the case of compound nouns, adjectives, and adverbs the first member of the compound (unless it be **ge-** or **be-**) receives the stronger stress: **héofon-ríce**, *heaven-kingdom*; **ǫnd-giet**, *intelligence*; **sōð-fæst**, *truthful*; **gōd-cund**, *divine*; **éall-unga**, *entirely*; **blíðe-líce**, *blithely*. But **be-hāt**, *promise*; **ge-béd**, *prayer*; **ge-féalic**, *joyous*; **be-sōne**, *immediately*.

Compound verbs, however, have the stress on the radical syllable: **for-gíefan**, *to forgive*; **of-línnan**, *to cease*; **ā-cnáwan**, *to know*; **wið-stǫndan**, *to withstand*; **on-sácan**, *to resist*.

NOTE. — The tendency of nouns to take the stress on the prefix, while verbs retain it on the root, is exemplified in many Modern English words: *préference*, *prefér*; *cónttract* (noun), *contráct* (verb); *ábstinence*, *abstáin*; *pérfume* (noun), *perfúme* (verb).

## CHAPTER III.

## INFLECTIONS.

## Cases.

**12.** There are five cases in Old English: the nominative, the genitive, the dative, the accusative, and the instrumental.<sup>1</sup> Each of them, except the nominative, may be governed by prepositions. When used without prepositions, they have, in general, the following functions:

(a) The nominative, as in Modern English, is the case of the subject of a finite verb.

(b) The genitive (the possessive case of Modern English) is the case of the possessor or source. It may be called the *of* case.

(c) The dative is the case of the indirect object. It may be called the *to* or *for* case.

(d) The accusative (the objective case of Modern English) is the case of the direct object.

(e) The instrumental, which rarely differs from the dative in form, is the case of the means or the method. It may be called the *with* or *by* case.

The following paradigm of *mūð*, *the mouth*, illustrates the several cases (the article being, for the present, gratuitously added in the Modern English equivalents):

---

<sup>1</sup> Most grammars add a sixth case, the vocative. But it seems best to consider the vocative as only a *function* of the nominative *form*.



*Singular.*

*Plural.*

|   |  |
|---|--|
| N. <b>mūð</b> = <i>the mouth.</i>   | <b>mūð-as</b> = <i>the mouths.</i>                               |
| G. <b>mūð-es</b> <sup>1</sup> = <i>of the mouth</i><br>(= <i>the mouth's</i> ). | <b>mūð-a</b> = <i>of the mouths.</i><br>(= <i>the mouths'</i> ). |
| D. <b>mūð-e</b> = <i>to or for the mouth.</i>                                   | <b>mūð-um</b> = <i>to or for the mouths.</i>                     |
| A. <b>mūð</b> = <i>the mouth</i>  | <b>mūð-as</b> = <i>the mouths.</i>                               |
| I. <b>mūðe</b> = <i>with or by means of</i><br><i>the mouth.</i>                | <b>mūð-um</b> = <i>with or by means of</i><br><i>the mouths.</i> |

**Gender.**

**13.** The gender of Old English nouns, unlike that of Modern English, depends partly on meaning and partly on form, or ending. Thus **mūð**, *mouth*, is masculine; **tunge**, *tongue*, feminine; **ēage**, *eye*, neuter.

No very comprehensive rules, therefore, can be given; but the gender of every noun should be learned with its meaning. Gender will be indicated in the vocabularies by the different gender forms of the definite article, **sē** for the masculine, **sēo** for the feminine, and **ðæt** for the neuter: **sē mūð**, **sēo tunge**, **ðæt ēage** = *the mouth, the tongue, the eye*.

All nouns ending in **-dōm**, **-hād**, **-scipe**, or **-ere** are masculine (*cf.* Modern English *wisdom*, *childhood*, *friendship*, *worker*). Masculine, also, are nouns ending in **-a**.

Those ending in **-nes** or **-ung** are feminine (*cf.* Mod-

---

<sup>1</sup> Of course our "apostrophe and s" (= 's) comes from the Old English genitive ending **-es**. The *e* is preserved in *Wednesday* (= Old English **Wōdnes dæg**). But at a very early period it was thought that *John's book*, for example, was a shortened form of *John his book*. Thus Addison (*Spectator*, No. 135) declares 's a survival of *his*. How, then, would he explain the *s* of *his*? And how would he dispose of *Mary's book*?

ern English goodness, and gerundial forms in *-ing*: see-*ing* is believing).

Thus *sē wīsdōm*, *wisdom*; *sē cildhād*, *childhood*; *sē frēondscipe*, *friendship*; *sē fiscere*, *fisher(man)*; *sē hunta*, *hunter*; *sēo gelīcnes*, *likeness*; *sēo leornung*, *learning*.

### Declensions.

**14.** There are two great systems of declension in Old English, the Vowel Declension and the Consonant Declension. A noun is said to belong to the Vowel Declension when the final letter of its stem is a vowel, this vowel being then known as the *stem-characteristic*; but if the stem-characteristic is a consonant, the noun belongs to the Consonant Declension. There might have been, therefore, as many subdivisions of the Vowel Declension in Old English as there were vowels, and as many subdivisions of the Consonant Declension as there were consonants. All Old English nouns, however, belonging to the Vowel Declension, ended their stems originally in *a*, *ō*, *i*, or *u*. Hence there are but four subdivisions of the Vowel Declension: *a*-stems, *ō*-stems, *i*-stems, and *u*-stems.

The Vowel Declension is commonly called the Strong Declension, and its nouns Strong Nouns.

NOTE. — The terms Strong and Weak were first used by Jacob Grimm (1785-1863) in the terminology of verbs, and thence transferred to nouns and adjectives. By a Strong Verb, Grimm meant one that could form its preterit out of its own resources; that is, without calling in the aid of an additional syllable: Modern English *run*, *ran*; *find*, *found*; but verbs of the Weak Conjugation had to borrow, as it were, an inflectional syllable: *gain*, *gained*; *help*, *helped*.

**15.** The stems of nouns belonging to the Consonant Declension ended, with but few exceptions, in the letter **n** (*cf.* Latin *homin-em, ration-em*, Greek *ποιμέν-α*). They are called, therefore, **n**-stems, the Declension itself being known as the **n**-Declension, or the Weak Declension. The nouns, also, are called Weak Nouns.

**16.** If every Old English noun had preserved the original Germanic stem-characteristic (or final letter of the stem), there would be no difficulty in deciding at once whether any given noun is an **a**-stem, **ō**-stem, **i**-stem, **u**-stem, or **n**-stem; but these final letters had, for the most part, either been dropped, or fused with the case-endings, long before the period of historic Old English. It is only, therefore, by a rigid comparison of the Germanic languages with one another, and with the other Aryan languages, that scholars are able to reconstruct a single Germanic language, in which the original stem-characteristics may be seen far better than in any one historic branch of the Germanic group (§ 5, Note).

This hypothetical language, which bears the same ancestral relation to the historic Germanic dialects that Latin bears to the Romance tongues, is known simply as *Germanic* (Gmc.), or as *Primitive Germanic*. Ability to reconstruct Germanic forms is not expected of the students of this book, but the following table should be examined as illustrating the basis of distinction among the several Old English declensions (O.E. = Old English, Mn.E. = Modern English):

|                                |             |   |                      |                         |                      |
|--------------------------------|-------------|---|----------------------|-------------------------|----------------------|
| I. Strong or Vowel Declensions | {           | (1) a-stems                                 | {                    | Gmc. <i>staina-z</i> ,  |                      |
|                                |             |   | {                    | O E <b>stān</b> ,       |                      |
|                                |             |   | {                    | Mn E. <i>stone</i>      |                      |
|                                |             | (2) <b>ō</b> -stems                         | {                    | Gmc. <i>hallō</i> ,     |                      |
|                                | {           | O.E. <b>heall</b> ,                         |                      |                         |                      |
|                                | {           | Mn E. <i>hall</i> .                         |                      |                         |                      |
|                                | (3) i-stems | {   | Gmc. <i>bōni-z</i> , |                         |                      |
|                                | {           | O E <b>bēn</b> ,                            |                      |                         |                      |
|                                | {           | Mn.E. <i>boon</i>                           |                      |                         |                      |
|                                | (4) u-stems | {   | Gmc. <i>sunu-z</i> , |                         |                      |
|                                | {           | O.E. <b>sunu</b> ,                          |                      |                         |                      |
|                                | {           | Mn.E. <i>son</i> .                          |                      |                         |                      |
| II. Consonant Declensions      | {           | (1) n-stems (Weak Declension)               | {                    | Gmc. <i>tungōn-iz</i> , |                      |
|                                |             |   | {                    | O E. <b>tung-an</b> ,   |                      |
|                                |             |   | {                    | Mn.E. <i>tongue-s</i> . |                      |
|                                |             | (2) Remnants of other Consonant Declensions | (a)                  | {                       | Gmc. <i>fōt-iz</i> , |
|                                |             |   |                      | {                       | O.E. <b>fēt</b> ,    |
|                                |             |   |                      | {                       | Mn.E. <i>feet</i>    |
| (b)                            | {           | Gmc. <i>frijōnd-iz</i> ,                    |                      |                         |                      |
|                                | {           | O E. <b>friēnd</b> ,                        |                      |                         |                      |
|                                | {           | Mn.E. <i>friend-s</i> .                     |                      |                         |                      |
| (c)                            | {           | Gmc. <i>brōðr-iz</i> ,                      |                      |                         |                      |
|                                | {           | O E. <b>brōðor</b> ,                        |                      |                         |                      |
|                                | {           | Mn E. <i>brother-s</i> .                    |                      |                         |                      |

NOTE. — “It will be seen that if Old English **ēage**, *eye*, is said to be an **n-stem**, what is meant is this, that at some former period the kernel of the word ended in **-n**, while, as far as the Old English language proper is concerned, all that is implied is that the word is inflected in a certain manner” (Jespersen, *Progress in Language*, § 109).

This is true of all Old English stems, whether Vowel or Consonant. The division, therefore, into **a-stems**, **ō-stems**, etc., is made in the interests of grammar as well as of philology.

### Conjugations.

**17.** There are, likewise, two systems of conjugation in Old English: the Strong or Old Conjugation, and the Weak or New Conjugation.

The verbs of the Strong Conjugation (the so-called Irregular Verbs of Modern English) number about three hundred, of which not one hundred remain in Modern English (§ 101, Note). They form their preterit and frequently their past participle by changing the radical vowel of the present stem. This vowel change or modification is called *ablaut* (pronounced *áhplowt*): Modern English *sing, sang, sung; rise, rose, risen*. As the radical vowel of the preterit plural is often different from that of the preterit singular, there are four *principal parts* or *tense stems* in an Old English strong verb, instead of the three of Modern English. The four principal parts in the conjugation of a strong verb are (1) the present indicative, (2) the preterit indicative singular, (3) the preterit indicative plural, and (4) the past participle.

Strong verbs fall into seven groups, illustrated in the following table:

| PRESENT  | PRET SING                        | PRET PLUR                              | PAST PARTICIPLE   |
|--|----------------------------------|--|---|
| I<br><b>Bītan</b> , <i>to bite</i> :<br><b>Ic bīt-e</b> , <i>I bite</i> or<br><i>shall bite</i> . <sup>1</sup> | <b>Ic bāt</b> , <i>I bit</i> .   | <b>Wē bit-on</b> ,<br><i>we bit</i> .  | <b>Ic hæbbe ge<sup>2</sup>-bit-en</b> ,<br><i>I have bitten</i> . |
| II<br><b>Bēodan</b> , <i>to bid</i> :<br><b>Ic bēod-e</b> , <i>I bid</i> or<br><i>shall bid</i> .              | <b>Ic bēad</b> , <i>I bade</i> . | <b>Wē bud-on</b> ,<br><i>we bade</i> . | <b>Ic hæbbe ge-bod-en</b> ,<br><i>I have bidden</i> .             |

<sup>1</sup> Early West Saxon had no distinctive form for the future. The present was used both as present proper and as future Cf. Modern English "I go home tomorrow," or "I am going home tomorrow" for "I shall go home tomorrow"

<sup>2</sup> The prefix **ge-** (Middle English *y-*), cognate with Latin *co* (*con*) and implying completeness of action, was not always used. It never

| PRESENT   | PRET SING                          | PRET PLUR                              | PAST PARTICIPLE  |
|---|------------------------------------|--|--|
| III<br><b>Bindan</b> , <i>to bind</i> :<br><b>Ic bind-e</b> , <i>I bind or shall bind.</i>      | <b>Ic bōnd</b> , <i>I bound</i>    | <b>Wē bund-on</b> , <i>we bound.</i>   | <b>Ic hæbbe ge-bund-en</b> , <i>I have bound.</i>                  |
| IV<br><b>Beran</b> , <i>to bear</i> :<br><b>Ic ber-e</b> , <i>I bear or shall bear.</i>         | <b>Ic bæŕ</b> , <i>I bore</i>      | <b>Wē bāŕ-on</b> , <i>we bore.</i>     | <b>Ic hæbbe ge-bor-en</b> , <i>I have borne.</i>                   |
| V<br><b>Metan</b> , <i>to measure</i> :<br><b>Ic met-e</b> , <i>I measure or shall measure.</i> | <b>Ic mæt</b> , <i>I measured.</i> | <b>Wē mǣt-on</b> , <i>we measured.</i> | <b>Ic hæbbe ge-met-en</b> , <i>I have measured</i>                 |
| VI<br><b>Faran</b> , <i>to go</i> :<br><b>Ic far-e</b> , <i>I go or shall go.</i>               | <b>Ic fōr</b> , <i>I went.</i>     | <b>Wē fōr-on</b> , <i>we went.</i>     | <b>Ic eom<sup>1</sup> ge-far-en</b> , <i>I have (am) gone.</i>     |
| VII<br><b>Feallan</b> , <i>to fall</i> :<br><b>Ic feall-e</b> , <i>I fall or shall fall.</i>    | <b>Ic fēoll</b> , <i>I fell.</i>   | <b>Wē fēoll-on</b> , <i>we fell.</i>   | <b>Ic eom<sup>1</sup> ge-feall-en</b> , <i>I have (am) fallen.</i> |

**18.** The verbs of the Weak Conjugation (the so-called Regular Verbs of Modern English) form their preterit

occurs in the past participles of compound verbs: **op-feallan**, *to fall off*, past participle **op-feallen** (not **op-gefeallen**). Milton errs in prefixing it to a present participle:

“What needs my Shakespeare, for his honour’d bones,  
The labour of an age in piled stones?  
Or that his hallow’d reliques should be hid  
Under a star-*ypointing* pyramid.”

— *Epitaph on William Shakespeare.*

And Shakespeare misuses it in “Y-ravished,” a preterit (*Pericles* III, *Prologue* l. 35).

It survives in the archaic *y-clept* (Old English **ge-clypod**, *called*). It appears as *a* in *aware* (Old English **ge-wær**), as *e* in *enough* (Old English **ge-nōh**), and as *i* in *handiwork* (Old English **hand-ge-weorc**).

<sup>1</sup> With intransitive verbs denoting *change of condition*, the Old English auxiliary is usually some form of *to be* rather than *to have*. See § 139.

and past participle by adding to the present stem a suffix<sup>1</sup> with *d* or *t*: Modern English *love, loved; sleep, slept*.

The stem of the preterit plural is never different from the stem of the preterit singular; hence these verbs have only three distinctive tense-stems, or principal parts: *viz.*, (1) the present indicative, (2) the preterit indicative, and (3) the past participle.

Weak verbs fall into three groups, illustrated in the following table:

| PRESENT  | PRETERIT  | PAST PARTICIPLE.  |
|--|---|---|
| I<br><b>Frēmman</b> , <i>to perform</i> :<br><b>Ic frēm-m-e</b> , <i>I perform</i><br>or <i>shall perform</i> .  | <b>Ic frēm-ede</b> , <i>I per-</i><br><i>formed</i> . | <b>Ic hægbe ge-frēm-ed</b> ,<br><i>I have performed</i> . |
| II<br><b>Bodian</b> , <i>to proclaim</i> :<br><b>Ic bodi-e</b> , <i>I proclaim</i><br>or <i>shall proclaim</i> . | <b>Ic bod-ode</b> , <i>I pro-</i><br><i>claimed</i>   | <b>Ic hægbe ge-bod-od</b> ,<br><i>I have proclaimed</i> . |
| III<br><b>Habban</b> , <i>to have</i> :<br><b>Ic hægbe</b> , <i>I have</i> or<br><i>shall have</i>               | <b>Ic hæg-de</b> , <i>I had</i>                       | <b>Ic hægbe ge-hæg-d</b> , <i>I</i><br><i>have had</i> .  |

19. There remain a few verbs (chiefly the Auxiliary Verbs of Modern English) that do not belong entirely to either of the two conjugations mentioned. The most important of them are, **Ic mæg** *I may*, **Ic mihte** *I might*; **Ic cqn** *I can*, **Ic cūðe** *I could*; **Ic mōt** *I must*, **Ic mōste** *I*

<sup>1</sup> The theory that *loved*, for example, is a fused form of *love-did* has been generally given up. The dental ending was doubtless an Indo-Germanic suffix, which became completely specialized only in the Teutonic languages.

*must*; **Ic sceal** *I shall*, **Ic sceolde** *I should*; **Ic eom** *I am*, **Ic wæs** *I was*; **Ic wille** *I will*, **Ic wolde** *I would*; **Ic dō** *I do*, **Ic dyde** *I did*; **Ic gā** *I go*, **Ic ēode** *I went*.

All but the last four of these are known as Preterit-Present Verbs. The present tense of each of them is *in origin* a preterit, *in function* a present. Cf. Modern English *ought* (= *owed*).



## CHAPTER IV.

### ORDER OF WORDS.

**20.** The order of words in Old English is more like that of Modern German than of Modern English. Yet it is only the Transposed order that the student will feel to be at all un-English; and the Transposed order, even before the period of the Norman Conquest, was fast yielding place to the Normal order.

The three divisions of order are (1) Normal, (2) Inverted, and (3) Transposed.

(1) Normal order = subject + predicate. In Old English, the Normal order is found chiefly in independent clauses. The predicate is followed by its modifiers: **Sē hwæl bið micle læssa þonne oðre hwalas**, *That whale is much smaller than other whales*; **Qnd hē geseah twā scipu**, *And he saw two ships*.

(2) Inverted order = predicate + subject. This order occurs also in independent clauses, and is employed (a) when some modifier of the predicate precedes the predicate, the subject being thrown behind. The



words most frequently causing Inversion in Old English prose are **pā then**, **þonne then**, and **þær there**: **Ðā fōr hē**, *Then went he*; **Ðonne ærnað hȳ ealle tōweard þæm fēo**, *Then gallop they all toward the property*; **ac þær bið medo genōh**, *but there is mead enough*.

Inversion is employed (b) in interrogative sentences: **Lufast ðū mē?** *Lovest thou me?* and (c) in imperative sentences: **Cume ðīn rīce**, *Thy kingdom come*.

(3) Transposed order=subject . . . predicate. That is, the predicate comes last in the sentence, being preceded by its modifiers. This is the order observed in dependent clauses:<sup>1</sup> **Ðonne cymeð sē man sē þæt swiftoste hors hafað**, *Then comes the man that has the swiftest horse* (literally, *that the swiftest horse has*); **Ne mētte hē ær nān gebūn land, siþþan hē from his āgnum hām fōr**, *Nor did he before find any cultivated land, after he went from his own home* (literally, *after he from his own home went*).

**21.** Two other peculiarities in the order of words require a brief notice.

(1) Pronominal datives and accusatives usually precede the predicate: **Hē hine oferwann**, *He overcame him* (literally, *He him overcame*); **Dryhten him andwyrde**, *The Lord answered him*. But substantival datives and accusatives, as in Modern English, follow the predicate.

<sup>1</sup> But in the *Voyages of Othhere and Wulfstan*, in which the style is apparently more that of oral than of written discourse, the Normal is more frequent than the Transposed order in dependent clauses. In his other writings Alfred manifests a partiality for the Transposed order in dependent clauses, except in the case of substantival clauses introduced by **þæt**. Such clauses show a marked tendency to revert to their Normal *oratio recta* order. The norm thus set by the indirect affirmative clause seems to have proved an important factor in the

The following sentence illustrates both orders: **H̄y genāmon Ioseph, qnd hine gesealdon cīpemqnum, qnd h̄y hine gesealdon in Ēgypta lqnd**, *They took Joseph, and sold him to merchants, and they sold him into Egypt* (literally, *They took Joseph, and him sold to merchants, and they him sold into Egyptians' land*).

NOTE.—The same order prevails in the case of pronominal nominatives used as predicate nouns:  **Ic hit eom**, *It is I* (literally, *I it am*);  **Ðū hit eart**, *It is thou* (literally, *Thou it art*).

(2) The attributive genitive, whatever relationship it expresses, usually precedes the noun which it qualifies: **Breoton is gārsecges īgland**, *Britain is an island of the ocean* (literally, *ocean's island*); **Swilce hit is ēac berende on węcga ōrum**, *Likewise it is also rich in ores of metals* (literally, *metals' ores*); **Cyninga cyning**, *King of kings* (literally, *Kings' king*); **Gē witon Godes rīces ger̄yne**, *Ye know the mystery of the kingdom of God* (literally, *Ye know God's kingdom's mystery*).

A preposition governing the word modified by the genitive, precedes the genitive:<sup>1</sup> **On ealdra manna sægenum**, *In old men's sayings*; **Æt ōæra stræta endum**, *At the ends of the streets* (literally, *At the streets' ends*); **For ealra ōīnra hālgena lufan**, *For all thy saints' love*. See, also, § 94, (5).

ultimate disappearance of Transposition from dependent clauses. The influence of Norman French helped only to consummate forces that were already busily at work.

<sup>1</sup> The positions of the genitive are various. It frequently follows its noun: **þā bearn þāra Aðeniensa**, *The children of the Athenians*. It may separate an adjective and a noun: **Ān lýtēl sæs earm**, *A little arm of (the) sea*. The genitive may here be construed as an adjective, or part of a compound = *A little sea-arm*; **Mid monegum Godes gifum**, *With many God-gifts = many divine gifts*

## CHAPTER V.

## PRACTICAL SUGGESTIONS.

**22.** In the study of Old English, the student must remember that he is dealing not with a foreign or isolated language but with the earlier forms of his own mother tongue. The study will prove profitable and stimulating in proportion as close and constant comparison is made of the old with the new. The guiding principles in such a comparison are reducible chiefly to two. These are (1) the regular operation of phonetic laws, resulting especially in certain Vowel Shiftings, and (2) the alterations in form and syntax that are produced by Analogy.

(1) "The former of these is of physiological or *natural* origin, and is perfectly and inflexibly regular throughout the same period of the same language; and even though different languages show different phonetic habits and predilections, there is a strong general resemblance between the changes induced in one language and in another; many of the particular laws are true for many languages.

(2) "The other principle is psychological, or mental, or *artificial*, introducing various more or less capricious changes that are supposed to be emendations; and its operation is, to some extent, uncertain and fitful."<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Skeat, *Principles of English Etymology*, Second Series, § 342. But Jespersen, with Collitz and others, stoutly contests "the theory of sound laws and analogy sufficing between them to explain everything in linguistic development."

## (1) Vowel-Shiftings.

**23.** It will prove an aid to the student in acquiring the inflections and vocabulary of Old English to note carefully the following shiftings that have taken place in the gradual growth of the Old English vowel system into that of Modern English.

(1) As stated in § 3, the Old English inflectional vowels, which were all short and unaccented, weakened in early Middle English to *e*. This *e* in Modern English is frequently dropped :

| OLD ENGLISH | MIDDLE ENGLISH | MODERN ENGLISH. |
|-------------|----------------|-----------------|
| stān-as     | ston-es        | stones          |
| sun-u       | sun-e          | son             |
| sun-a       | sun-e          | sons            |
| ox-an       | ox-en          | oxen            |
| swift-ra    | swift-er       | swifter         |
| swift-ost   | swift-est      | swiftest        |
| lōc-ode     | lok-ede        | looked          |

(2) The Old English long vowels have shifted their phonetic values with such uniform regularity that it is possible in almost every case to infer the Modern English sound ; but our spelling is so chaotic that while the student may infer the modern sound, he cannot always infer the modern symbol representing the sound.

| OLD ENGLISH. | MODERN ENGLISH.                   |   |
|--------------|-----------------------------------|---|
| ā            | o (as in <i>no</i> ) <sup>1</sup> | { nā = <i>no</i> ; stān = <i>stone</i> ; bān =<br><i>bone</i> ; rād = <i>road</i> ; āc = <i>oak</i> ;<br>hāl = <i>whole</i> ; hām = <i>home</i> ;<br>sāwan = <i>to sow</i> ; gāst =<br><i>ghost</i> |

---

<sup>1</sup> But Old English ā preceded by **w** sometimes gives Modern English *o* as in *two* twā = *two* ; hwā = *who* ; hwām = *whom*.

| OLD ENGLISH. | MODERN ENGLISH               |   |
|--------------|------------------------------|---|
| ē            | e (as in <i>he</i> )         | { <b>hē</b> = <i>he</i> ; <b>wē</b> = <i>we</i> ; <b>ðē</b> = <i>thee</i> ;<br><b>mē</b> = <i>me</i> , <b>gē</b> = <i>ye</i> ; <b>hēl</b> = <i>heel</i> ;<br><b>wērig</b> = <i>weary</i> ; <b>gelēfan</b> = <i>to</i><br><i>believe</i> ; <b>gēs</b> = <i>geese</i> .   |
| ī (ȳ)        | i (y) (as in <i>mine</i> )   | { <b>mīn</b> = <i>mine</i> ; <b>ðīn</b> = <i>thine</i> ; <b>wīr</b><br>= <i>wire</i> ; <b>mȳs</b> = <i>mice</i> ; <b>rīm</b> =<br><i>rime</i> (wrongly spelt <i>rhyme</i> );<br><b>lȳs</b> = <i>lice</i> ; <b>bī</b> = <i>by</i> ; <b>scīnan</b> =<br><i>to shine</i> ; <b>stīg rāp</b> = <i>sty-rope</i><br>(shortened to <i>stirrup</i> , <b>stīgan</b><br>meaning <i>to mount</i> ).   |
| ō            | o (as in <i>do</i> )         | { <b>dō</b> = <i>I do</i> ; <b>tō</b> = <i>too, to</i> ; <b>gōs</b> =<br><i>goose</i> ; <b>tōð</b> = <i>tooth</i> , <b>mōna</b> =<br><i>moon</i> ; <b>dōm</b> = <i>doom</i> ; <b>mōd</b> =<br><i>mood</i> ; <b>wōgian</b> = <i>to woo</i> ;<br><b>slōh</b> = <i>I slew</i> .  |
| ū            | ou (ow) (as in <i>thou</i> ) | { <b>ðū</b> = <i>thou</i> ; <b>fūl</b> = <i>foul</i> ; <b>hūs</b> =<br><i>house</i> ; <b>nū</b> = <i>now</i> ; <b>hū</b> = <i>how</i> ;<br><b>tūn</b> = <i>town</i> ; <b>ūre</b> = <i>our</i> ; <b>ūt</b> =<br><i>out</i> ; <b>hlūd</b> = <i>loud</i> ; <b>ðūs</b> = <i>send</i> =<br><i>thousand</i> .   |
| ǣ, ēa, ēo    | ea (as in <i>sea</i> )       | { <b>ǣ</b> : <b>sǣ</b> = <i>sea</i> ; <b>mǣl</b> = <i>meal</i> ;<br><b>dǣlan</b> = <i>to deal</i> ; <b>clǣne</b> =<br><i>clean</i> ; <b>grǣdig</b> = <i>greedy</i> .<br><b>ēa</b> : <b>ēare</b> = <i>ear</i> ; <b>ēast</b> = <i>east</i> ;<br><b>drēam</b> = <i>dream</i> , <b>gēar</b> = <i>year</i> ;<br><b>bēatan</b> = <i>to beat</i> .<br><b>ēo</b> : <b>ðrēo</b> = <i>three</i> ; <b>drēorig</b> =<br><i>dreary</i> ; <b>sēo</b> = <i>she</i> ; <b>hrēod</b> =<br><i>reed</i> ; <b>dēop</b> = <i>deep</i> . |

(2) Analogy.

24. But more important than vowel shifting is the great law of Analogy, for Analogy shapes not only words but constructions. It belongs, therefore, to

Etymology and to Syntax, since it influences both form and function. By this law, minorities tend to pass over to the side of the majorities. "The greater mass of cases exerts an assimilative influence upon the smaller."<sup>1</sup> The effect of Analogy is to simplify and to regularize. "The main factor in getting rid of irregularities is group-influence, or Analogy—the influence exercised by the members of an association-group on one another. . . . Irregularity consists in partial isolation from an association-group through some formal difference."<sup>2</sup>

Under the influence of Analogy, entire declensions and conjugations have been swept away, leaving in Modern English not a trace of their former existence. There are in Old English, for example, five plural endings for nouns, **-as**, **-a**, **-e**, **-u**, and **-an**. No one could well have predicted<sup>3</sup> that **-as** (Middle English *-es*) would soon take the lead, and become the norm to which the other endings would eventually conform, for there were more **an**-plurals than **as**-plurals; but the **as**-plurals were doubtless more often employed in everyday speech. *Oxen* (Old English **oxan**) is the sole pure survival of the hundreds of Old English **an**-plurals.

<sup>1</sup> Whitney, *Life and Growth of Language*, Chap. IV.

<sup>2</sup> Sweet, *A New English Grammar*, Part I, § 535.

<sup>3</sup> As Skeat says (§ 22, (2)), Analogy is "fitful." It enables us to explain many linguistic phenomena, but not to anticipate them. The multiplication of books tends to check its influence by perpetuating the forms already in use. Thus Chaucer employed nine *en*-plurals, and his influence served for a time to check the further encroachment of the *es*-plurals. As soon as there is an acknowledged standard in any language, the operation of Analogy is fettered.

No group of feminine nouns in Old English had **-es** as the genitive singular ending; but by the close of the Middle English period all feminines formed their genitive singular in **-es** (or **-s**, Modern English 's) after the analogy of the Old English masculine and neuter nouns with **es**-genitives. The weak preterits in **-ode** have all been leveled under the **ed**-forms, and of the three hundred strong verbs in Old English more than two hundred have become weak.

These are not cases of derivation (as are the shifted vowels): Modern English **-s** in *sons*, for example, could not possibly be derived from Old English **-a** in *sunā*, or Middle English **-e** in *sune* (§ 23, (1)). They are cases of replacement by Analogy.

A few minor examples will quicken the student's appreciation of the nature of the influence exercised by Analogy:

(a) The intrusive *l* in *could* (Chaucer always wrote *coud* or *coude*) is due to association with *would* and *should*, in each of which *l* belongs by etymological right.

(b) *He need not* (for *He needs not*) is due to the assimilative influence of the auxiliaries *may*, *can*, etc., which have never added **-s** for their third person singular (§ 137).

(c) *I am friends with him*, in which *friends* is a crystalized form for *on good terms*, may be traced to the influence of such expressions as *He and I are friends*, *They are friends*, etc.

(d) Such errors as are seen in *runned*, *seed*, *gooses*, *badder*, *hissel*, *says I* (usually coupled with *says he*)

are all analogical formations. Though not sanctioned by good usage, it is hardly right to call these forms the products of "false analogy." The grammar involved is false, because unsupported by literary usages and traditions; but the analogy on which these forms are built is no more false than the law of gravitation is false when it makes a dress sit unconventionally.



## PART II.

---

### ETYMOLOGY AND SYNTAX.

---

#### THE STRONG OR VOWEL DECLENSIONS OF NOUNS. THE a-DECLENSION.

#### CHAPTER VI.

##### (a) Masculine *a*-Stems.

[O.E., M.E., and Mn.E. will henceforth be used for Old English, Middle English, and Modern English. Other abbreviations employed are self-explaining.]

**25.** The *a*-Declension, corresponding to the Second or *o*-Declension of Latin and Greek, contains only (*a*) masculine and (*b*) neuter nouns. To this declension belong most of the O.E. masculine and neuter nouns. At a very early period, many of the nouns belonging properly to the *i*- and *u*-Declensions began to pass over to the *a*-Declension. This declension may therefore be considered the *normal declension* for all masculine and neuter nouns belonging to the Strong Declension.

**26.** Paradigms of *sē mūð*, *mouth*; *sē fiscere*, *fisherman*; *sē hwæl*, *whale*; *sē mearh*, *horse*; *sē finger*, *finger*:

|                   |        |           |         |         |          |
|-------------------|--------|-----------|---------|---------|----------|
| <i>Sing. N.A.</i> | mūð    | fiscer-e  | hwæl    | mearh   | finger   |
| <i>G.</i>         | mūð-es | fiscer-es | hwæl-es | mēar-es | fingr-es |
| <i>D.I.</i>       | mūð-e  | fiscer-e  | hwæl-e  | mēar-e  | fingr-e  |
| <i>Plur. N.A.</i> | mūð-as | fiscer-as | hwal-as | mēar-as | fingr-as |
| <i>G.</i>         | mūð-a  | fiscer-a  | hwal-a  | mēar-a  | fingr-a  |
| <i>D.I.</i>       | mūð-um | fiscer-um | hwal-um | mēar-um | fingr-um |

NOTE. — For meanings of the cases, see § 12. The dative and instrumental are alike in all nouns.

27. The student will observe (1) that nouns whose nominative ends in **-e** (**fiscere**) drop this letter before adding the case endings; (2) that **æ** before a consonant (**hwæl**) changes to **a** in the plural;<sup>1</sup> (3) that **h**, preceded by **r** (**mearh**) or **l** (**seolh**, *seal*), is dropped before an inflectional vowel, the stem vowel being then lengthened by way of compensation; (4) that dissyllables (**finger**) having the first syllable long, generally syncopate the vowel of the second syllable before adding the case endings.<sup>2</sup>

28. Paradigm of the Definite Article<sup>3</sup> **sē**, **sēo**, **ðæt** = *the*:

<sup>1</sup> Adjectives usually retain **æ** in closed syllables, changing it to **a** in open syllables: **hwæt** (*active*), **glæd** (*glad*), **wær** (*wary*) have *G.* **hwates**, **glades**, **wares**; *D.* **hwatum**, **gladum**, **warum**; but *A.* **hwætne**, **glædne**, **wærne**. Nouns, however, change to **a** only in open syllables followed by a guttural vowel, **a** or **u**. The **æ** in the open syllables of the singular is doubtless due to the analogy of the *N.A.* singular, both being closed syllables.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. *Mn.E.* *drizz'ling*, *rememb'ring*, *abysmal* (*abysm* = *abizum*), *sick'ning*, in which the principle of syncopation is precisely the same.

<sup>3</sup> This may mean four things: (1) *The*, (2) *That* (demonstrative), (3) *He*, *she*, *it*, (4) *Who*, *which*, *that* (relative pronoun). *Mn E* demonstrative *that* is, of course, the survival of *O E.* neuter **ðæt** in its demonstrative sense. Professor Victor Henry (*Comparative Grammar of English and German*, § 160, 3) sees a survival of dative plural demonstrative **ðæm** in such an expression as *in them days*. It seems more probable, however, that *them* so used has followed the lead of

|                     | <i>Masculine.</i> | <i>Feminine.</i> | <i>Neuter.</i> |
|---------------------|-------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <i>Sing. N.</i>     | sē                | sēo              | ðæt            |
| <i>G.</i>           | ðæs               | ðære             | ðæs            |
| <i>D.</i>           | ðæm (ðām)         | ðære             | ðæm (ðām)      |
| <i>A.</i>           | ðone              | ðā               | ðæt            |
| <i>I.</i>           | ðȳ, ðon           | —                | ðȳ, ðon        |
| <i>All Genders.</i> |                   |                  |                |
| <i>Plur. N.A.</i>   |                   | ðā               |                |
| <i>G.</i>           |                   | ðāra             |                |
| <i>D.</i>           |                   | ðæm (ðām)        |                |

29.

VOCABULARY.<sup>1</sup>

|  |   |
|--|---|
| sē bōcere, <i>scribe</i> [bōc].                        | sē hierde, <i>herdsman</i> [shep-herd]. |
| sē cyning, <i>king</i>                                 | qnd (and), <i>and</i>                   |
| sē dæg, <i>day</i> .                                   | sē secg, <i>man, warrior</i> .          |
| sē end, <i>end</i> .                                   | sē seolh, <i>seal</i>                   |
| sē engel, <i>angel</i> [angelus]                       | sē stān, <i>stone</i> .                 |
| sē frēodōm, <i>freedom</i> .                           | sē wealh, <i>foreigner, Welshman</i>    |
| sē fugol (G. sometimes fugles),<br><i>bird</i> [fowl]. | [wal-nut].                              |
| sē gār, <i>spear</i> [gore, gar-fish].                 | sē weall, <i>wall</i> .                 |
| sē heofon, <i>heaven</i> .                             | sē wīsdōm, <i>wisdom</i> .              |
|  | sē wulf, <i>wolf</i> .                  |

30.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Ðāra wulfa mūðas. 2. Ðæs fisceres fingras. 3. Ðāra Wēala cyninge. 4. Ðæm englum qnd ðæm hierdum 5. Ðāra

*this* and *these*, *that* and *those*, in their double function of pronoun and adjective. There was doubtless some such evolution as, *I saw them. Them what? Them boys.*

An unquestioned survival of the dative singular feminine of the article is seen in the *-ter* of *Atterbury* (= æt ðære byrig, *at the town*); and ðæm survives in the *-ten* of *Attenborough*, the word *borough* having become an uninflected neuter. Skeat, *Principles*, First Series, § 185.

<sup>1</sup> The brackets contain etymological hints that may help the student to discern relationships otherwise overlooked. The genitive is given only when not perfectly regular.

daga ende. 6. Ðæm bōcerum ƿnd ðæm seƿgum ðæs cyninges. 7. Ðæm sēole ƿnd ðæm fuglum. 8. Ðā stānas ƿnd ðā gāras. 9. Hwala ƿnd mēara. 10. Ðāra ƿngla wīsdōm. 11. Ðæs cyninges bōceres frēodōm. 12. Ðāra hierda fuglum. 13. Ðy stāne. 14. Ðæm wealle.

II. 1. For the horses and the seals. 2. For the Welshmen's freedom. 3. Of the king's birds. 4. By the wisdom of men and angels. 5. With the spear and the stone. 6. The herdsman's seal and the warriors' spears. 7. To the king of heaven. 8. By means of the scribe's wisdom. 9. The whale's mouth and the foreigner's spear. 10. For the bird belonging to (= of) the king's scribe. 11. Of that finger.



## CHAPTER VII.

### (b) Neuter *a*-Stems.

**31.** The neuter nouns of the *a*-Declension differ from the masculines only in the N.A. plural.

**32.** Paradigms of *ðæt hof*, *court, dwelling*; *ðæt bearn*, *child*; *ðæt bān*, *bone*; *ðæt rīce*, *kingdom*; *ðæt spere*, *spear*; *ðæt werod*, *band of men*; *ðæt tungol*, *star*:

|                   |              |               |                 |               |               |                |                 |
|-------------------|--------------|---------------|-----------------|---------------|---------------|----------------|-----------------|
| <i>Sing. N.A.</i> | <i>hof</i>   | <i>bearn</i>  | <i>bān</i>      | <i>īc-e</i>   | <i>sper-e</i> | <i>werod</i>   | <i>tungol</i>   |
|                   | <i>G.</i>    | <i>hof-es</i> | <i>bearn-es</i> | <i>bān-es</i> | <i>rīc-es</i> | <i>sper-es</i> | <i>werod-es</i> |
|                   | <i>D I</i>   | <i>hof-e</i>  | <i>bearn-e</i>  | <i>bān-e</i>  | <i>rīc-e</i>  | <i>sper-e</i>  | <i>werod-e</i>  |
| <i>Plur. N.A.</i> | <i>hof-u</i> | <i>bearn</i>  | <i>bān</i>      | <i>rīc-u</i>  | <i>sper-u</i> | <i>werod</i>   | <i>tungl-u</i>  |
|                   | <i>G.</i>    | <i>hof-a</i>  | <i>bearn-a</i>  | <i>bān-a</i>  | <i>rīc-a</i>  | <i>sper-a</i>  | <i>werod-a</i>  |
|                   | <i>D I.</i>  | <i>hof-um</i> | <i>bearn-um</i> | <i>bān-um</i> | <i>rīc-um</i> | <i>sper-um</i> | <i>werod-um</i> |

**33.** The paradigms show (1) that monosyllables with short stems (*hof*) take *-u* in the N.A. plural; (2) that

monosyllables with long stems (**bearn**, **bān**) do not distinguish the N.A. plural from the N.A. singular;<sup>1</sup> (3) that dissyllables in **-e**, whether the stem be long or short (**rīce**, **spere**), have **-u** in the N.A. plural; (4) that dissyllables ending in a consonant and having the first syllable short<sup>2</sup> (**werod**) do not usually distinguish the N.A. plural from the N.A. singular; (5) that dissyllables ending in a consonant and having the first syllable long (**tungol**) more frequently take **-u** in the N.A. plural.

NOTE. — Syncopation occurs as in the masculine a-stems. See § 27, (4).

### 34. Present and Preterit Indicative of **habban**, to have :

#### PRESENT.

- Sing.* 1. **Io hæbbe**, *I have*, or *shall have*.<sup>3</sup>  
 2. **Ǿū hæfst** (**hafast**), *thou hast*, or *wilt have*.  
 3. **hē, hēo, hit hæfǾ** (**hafaǾ**), *he, she, it has*, or *will have*.  
*Plur.* 1. **wē habbaǾ**, *we have*, or *shall have*.  
 2. **gē habbaǾ**, *ye have*, or *will have*.  
 3. **hīe habbaǾ**, *they have*, or *will have*.

#### PRETERIT.

- Sing.* 1. **Io hæfde**, *I had*.  
 2. **Ǿū hæfdest**, *thou hadst*.  
 3. **hē, hēo, hit hæfde**, *he, she, it had*.  
*Plur.* 1. **wē hæfdon**, *we had*.  
 2. **gē hæfdon**, *ye had*.  
 3. **hīe hæfdon**, *they had*.

<sup>1</sup> Note the many nouns in Mn.E. that are unchanged in the plural. These are either survivals of O.E. long stems, *swine, sheep, deer, folk*, or analogical forms, *fish, trout, mackerel, salmon*, etc.

<sup>2</sup> Dissyllables whose first syllable is a prefix are, of course, excluded. They follow the declension of their last member: **gebed**, *prayer*, **gebedu**, *prayers*; **gefoeht**, *battle*, **gefoeht**, *battles*

<sup>3</sup> See § 17, Note 1. Note that (as in **hwæl**, § 27, (2)) **æ** changes to **a** when the following syllable contains **a**: **hæbbe**, but **hafast**.

NOTE.—The negative **ne**, *not*, which always precedes its verb, contracts with all the forms of **habban**. The negative loses its **e**, **habban** its **h**. **Ne + habban = nabban**; **Ic ne hæbbe = Ic næbbe**; **Ic ne hæfde = Ic næfde**, etc. The negative forms may be gotten, therefore, by simply substituting in each case **n** for **h**.

## 35.

## VOCABULARY.

Ǿæt dæł, *dale*.

Ǿæt dēor, *animal* [deer<sup>1</sup>].

Ǿæt dor, *door*.

Ǿæt fæt, *vessel* [vat].

Ǿæt fȳr, *fire*.

Ǿæt gēar, *year*.

Ǿæt geoc, *yoke*.

Ǿæt geset, *habitation* [settlement].

Ǿæt hēafod, *head*.

Ǿæt hūs, *house*.

Ǿæt lic, *body* [lich-gate].

Ǿæt lim, *limb*.

on (with dat) *in*

Ǿæt spor, *track*.

Ǿæt wāpen, *weapon*.

Ǿæt wif, *wife, woman*.

Ǿæt wīte, *punishment*.

Ǿæt word, *word*.

## 36.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Hē hafað ðæs cyninges bearn. 2. Ðā Wēalas habbað ðā speru. 3. Ðā wif habbað ðāra seġga wāpnu. 4. Ðū hæfst ðone fugol onð ðæt hūs ðæs hierdes. 5. Hæfð<sup>2</sup> hēo ðā fatu<sup>3</sup>? 6. Hæfde hē ðæs wifes lic on ðām hofe? 7. Hē næfde ðæs wifes lic; hē hæfde ðæs dēores hēafod. 8. Hæfð sē cyning gesetu on ðām dæle? 9. Sē bōcere hæfð ðā sēolas on ðām hūse. 10. Gē habbað frēodōm.

II. 1. They have yokes and spears. 2. We have not the vessels in the house. 3. He had fire in the vessel. 4. Did the woman have (= Had the woman) the children? 5. The animal has the body of the woman's child. 6. I shall have

<sup>1</sup> The old meaning survives in Shakespeare's "Rats and mice and such small deer," *King Lear*, III, 4, 144.

<sup>2</sup> See § 20, (2), (b).

<sup>3</sup> See § 27, (2).

the heads of the wolves. 7. He and she have the king's houses. 8. Have not (= **Nabbað**) the children the warrior's weapons?

## CHAPTER VIII.

THE *ō*-DECLENSION.

**37.** The *ō*-Declension, corresponding to the First or *ā*-Declension of Latin and Greek, contains only feminine nouns. Many feminine *i*-stems and *u*-stems soon passed over to this Declension. The *ō*-Declension may, therefore, be considered the *normal declension* for all strong feminine nouns.

**38.** Paradigms of **sēo giefu**, *gift*; **sēo wund**, *wound*; **sēo rōd**, *cross*; **sēo leornung**, *learning*, **sēo sāwol**, *soul*:

|                   |         |         |        |                |         |
|-------------------|---------|---------|--------|----------------|---------|
| <i>Sing. N</i>    | gief-u  | wund    | rōd    | leornung       | sāwol   |
| <i>G.</i>         | gief-e  | wund-e  | rōd-e  | leornung-a (e) | sāwl-e  |
| <i>D.I.</i>       | gief-e  | wund-e  | rōd-e  | leornung-a (e) | sāwl-e  |
| <i>A.</i>         | gief-e  | wund-e  | rōd-e  | leornung-a (e) | sāwl-e  |
| <i>Plur. N.A.</i> | gief-a  | wund-a  | rōd-a  | leornung-a     | sāwl-a  |
| <i>G.</i>         | gief-a  | wund-a  | rōd-a  | leornung-a     | sāwl-a  |
| <i>D.I</i>        | gief-um | wund-um | rōd-um | leornung-um    | sāwl-um |

**39.** Note (1) that monosyllables with short stems (**giefu**) take *u* in the nominative singular; (2) that monosyllables with long stems (**wund**, **rōd**) present the unchanged stem in the nominative singular; (3) that dissyllables are declined as monosyllables, except that abstract nouns in **-ung** prefer *a* to *e* in the singular.

NOTE.—Syncopation occurs as in masculine and neuter **a**-stems. See § 27, (4).

40. Present and Preterit Indicative of **bēon** (**wesan**),  
to *be*:

| PRESENT (first form).  | PRESENT (second form). | PRETERIT.  |
|------------------------|------------------------|------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> 1. Ic eom | 1. Ic bēom             | 1. Ic wæs  |
| 2. ƿū eart             | 2. ƿū bist             | 2. ƿū wære |
| 3. hē is               | 3. hē bið              | 3. hē wæs  |
| <i>Plur.</i> 1. wē     | 1. wē                  | 1. wē      |
| 2. gē                  | 2. gē                  | 2. gē      |
| 3. hīe                 | 3. hīe                 | 3. hīe     |
|                        | } bēoð                 | } wæron    |
| } sind (on), sint      |                        |            |

NOTE 1.—The forms **bēom**, **bist**, etc. are used chiefly as future tenses in O.E. They survive to-day only in dialects and in poetry. Farmer Dobson, for example, in Tennyson's *Promise of May*, uses *be* for all persons of the present indicative, both singular and plural; and *there be* is frequent in Shakespeare for *there are*. The Northern dialect employed **aron** as well as **sindon** and **sind** for the present plural; hence Mn E. *are*.

NOTE 2.—Fusion with **ne** gives **neom** and **nis** for the present; **næs**, **nære**, **næron** for the preterit.

NOTE 3.—The verb *to be* is followed by the nominative case, as in Mn.E.; but when the predicate noun is plural, and the subject a neuter pronoun in the singular, the verb agrees in number with the predicate noun. The neuter singular **ðæt** is frequently employed in this construction: **Ðæt wæron eall Finnas**, *They were all Fins*; **Ðæt sind englas**, *They are angels*; **Ðæt wæron engla gāstas**, *They were angels' spirits*.

Notice, too, that O.E. writers do not say *It is I*, *It is thou*, but *I it am*, *Thou it art*: **Ic hit eom**, **ƿū hit eart**. See § 21, (1), Note 1.

## 41.

## VOCABULARY.

|   |   |
|---|---|
| sēo brycg, <i>bridge</i> .                | sēo geoguð, <i>youth</i> .                  |
| sēo costnung, <i>temptation</i> .         | sēo glōf, <i>glove</i> .                    |
| sēo cwalu, <i>death</i> [quail, quell].   | sēo hālignes <sup>1</sup> <i>holiness</i> . |
| sēo fōr, <i>journey</i> [faran].          | sēo heall, <i>hall</i> .                    |
| sēo frōfor, <i>consolation, comfort</i> . | hēr, <i>here</i> .                          |

<sup>1</sup> All words ending in **-nes** double the **-s** before adding the case endings.



|   |  |
|---|--|
| <b>hwā</b> , <i>who?</i>                  | <b>sēo mildheortnes</b> , <i>mild-hearted-</i> |
| <b>hwær</b> , <i>where?</i>               | <i>ness, mercy</i>                             |
| <b>sēo lufu</b> , <i>love.</i>            | <b>sēo stōw</b> , <i>place</i> [stow away].    |
| <b>sēo mearc</b> , <i>boundary</i> [mark, | <b>ðær</b> , <i>there</i>                      |
| <i>marches</i> <sup>1</sup> ].            | <b>sēo ðearf</b> , <i>need.</i>                |
| <b>sēo mēd</b> , <i>meed, reward.</i>     | <b>sēo wylf</b> , <i>she wolf.</i>             |

## 42.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Hwær is ðære brycge ende? 2. Hēr sind ðara rīca mearca. 3. Hwā hæfð þā glōfa? 4. Ðær bið ðæm cyninge frōfre ðearf. 5. Sēo wund is on ðære wylfe hēafde. 6. Wē habbað costnunga. 7. Hīe nāron on ðære healle. 8. Ic hit neom. 9. Ðæt wāron Wēalas. 10. Ðæt sind ðæs wifes bearn.

II. 1. We shall have the women's gloves. 2. Where is the place? 3. He will be in the hall. 4. Those (Ðæt) were not the boundaries of the kingdom. 5. It was not I. 6. Ye are not the king's scribes. 7. The shepherd's words are full (full + gen.) of wisdom and comfort. 8. Where are the bodies of the children? 9. The gifts are not here. 10. Who has the seals and the birds?



## CHAPTER IX.

THE *i*-DECLENSION AND THE *u*-DECLENSION.The *i*-Declension.

43. The *i*-Declension, corresponding to the group of *i*-stems in the classical Third Declension, contains chiefly (*a*) masculine and (*b*) feminine nouns. The N. A. plural of these nouns ended originally in *-e* (from older *i*).

---

<sup>1</sup> As in *warden of the marches*.

*(a) Masculine i-Stems.*

**44.** These stems have almost completely gone over to the a-Declension, so that **-as** is more common than **-e** as the N.A. plural ending, whether the stem is long or short. The short stems all have **-e** in the N.A. singular.

**45.** Paradigms of **sē wŷrm**, *worm*; **sē wine**, *friend*.

|                   |         |            |
|-------------------|---------|------------|
| <i>Sing. N.A.</i> | wŷrm    | win-e      |
| <i>G.</i>         | wŷrm-es | win-es     |
| <i>D.I.</i>       | wŷrm-e  | win-e      |
| <i>Plur. N.A.</i> | wŷrm-as | win-as (e) |
| <i>G.</i>         | wŷrm-a  | win-a      |
| <i>D.I.</i>       | wŷrm-um | win-um     |

**Names of Peoples.**

**46.** The only i-stems that regularly retain **-e** of the N.A. plural are certain names of tribes or peoples used only in the plural.

**47.** Paradigms of **ǫā ƿngle**, *Angles*; **ǫā Norðymbre**, *Northumbrians*; **ǫā lēode**, *people*:

|                   |        |            |        |
|-------------------|--------|------------|--------|
| <i>Plur. N.A.</i> | ƿngle  | Norðymbre  | lēode  |
| <i>G.</i>         | ƿngla  | Norðymbra  | lēoda  |
| <i>D.I.</i>       | ƿnglum | Norðymbrum | lēodum |

*(b) Feminine i-Stems.*

**48.** The short stems (**fŷem-u**) conform entirely to the declension of short **ō**-stems; long stems (**cwēn**, **wŷrt**) differ from long **ō**-stems in having no ending for the A. singular. They show, also, a preference for **-e** rather than **-a** in the N.A. plural.

49. Paradigms of *sēo frēm-u*, *benefit*; *sēo cwēn*, *woman*, *queen* [quean]; *sēo wyrt*, *root* [wort]:

|                   |         |            |            |
|-------------------|---------|------------|------------|
| <i>Sing. N.</i>   | frēm-u  | cwēn       | wyrt       |
| <i>G.</i>         | frēm-e  | cwēn-e     | wyrt-e     |
| <i>D.I</i>        | frēm-e  | cwēn-e     | wyrt-e     |
| <i>A.</i>         | frēm-e  | cwēn       | wyrt       |
| <i>Plur. N.A.</i> | frēm-a  | cwēn-e (a) | wyrt-e (a) |
| <i>G.</i>         | frēm-a  | cwēn-a     | wyrt-a     |
| <i>D.I.</i>       | frēm-um | cwēn-um    | wyrt-um    |

The *u*-Declension.

50. The *u*-Declension, corresponding to the group of *u*-stems in the classical Third Declension, contains no neuters, and but few (*a*) masculines and (*b*) feminines. The short-stemmed nouns of both genders (*sun-u*, *dur-u*) retain the final *u* of the N.A. singular, while the long stems (*feld*, *hōnd*) drop it. The influence of the masculine *a*-stems is most clearly seen in the long-stemmed masculines of the *u*-Declension (*feld*, *feld-es*, etc.).

NOTE — Note the general aversion of all O E. long stems to final *-u*: cf. N.A. plural *hof-u*, but *bearn*, *bān*; N singular *gief-u*, but *wund*, *rōd*; N singular *frēm-u*, but *cwēn*, *wyrt*; N.A. singular *sun-u*, *dur-u*, but *feld*, *hōnd*.

(*a*) Masculine *u*-Stems.

51. Paradigms of *sē sun-u*, *son*; *sē feld*, *field*:

|                   |        |             |
|-------------------|--------|-------------|
| <i>Sing. N.A.</i> | sun-u  | feld        |
| <i>G.</i>         | sun-a  | feld-a (es) |
| <i>D I.</i>       | sun-a  | feld-a (e)  |
| <i>Plur. N.A.</i> | sun-a  | feld-a (as) |
| <i>G.</i>         | sun-a  | feld-a      |
| <i>D I.</i>       | sun-um | feld-um     |

(b) Feminine *u*-Stems.52. Paradigms of *sēo dur-u*, *door*; *sēo hōnd*, *hand*:

|                   |               |                |
|-------------------|---------------|----------------|
| <i>Sing. N.A.</i> | <i>dur-u</i>  | <i>hōnd</i>    |
| <i>G.</i>         | <i>dur-a</i>  | <i>hōnd-a</i>  |
| <i>D.I.</i>       | <i>dur-a</i>  | <i>hōnd-a</i>  |
| <i>Plur. N.A.</i> | <i>dur-a</i>  | <i>hōnd-a</i>  |
| <i>G.</i>         | <i>dur-a</i>  | <i>hōnd-a</i>  |
| <i>D.I.</i>       | <i>dur-um</i> | <i>hōnd-um</i> |

53. Paradigm of the Third Personal Pronoun, *hē*, *hēo*, *hit* = *he*, *she*, *it*:

|                   | <i>Masculine.</i>  | <i>Feminine.</i>    | <i>Neuter.</i> |
|-------------------|--------------------|---------------------|----------------|
| <i>Sing. N.</i>   | <i>hē</i>          | <i>hēo</i>          | <i>hit</i>     |
| <i>G.</i>         | <i>his</i>         | <i>hiere</i>        | <i>his</i>     |
| <i>D.</i>         | <i>him</i>         | <i>hiere</i>        | <i>him</i>     |
| <i>A.</i>         | <i>hine, hiene</i> | <i>hīe</i>          | <i>hit</i>     |
|                   |                    | <i>All Genders.</i> |                |
| <i>Plur. N.A.</i> |                    | <i>hīe</i>          |                |
| <i>G.</i>         |                    | <i>hiera</i>        |                |
| <i>D.</i>         |                    | <i>him</i>          |                |

## 54.

## VOCABULARY.

|  |  |
|--|--|
| (i-STEMS.)   | <i>Ǿā Seaxe</i> , <i>Saxons.</i>                                   |
| <i>sē cierr</i> , <i>turn, time</i> [ <i>char, chare, chore</i> ]. | <i>sē stēde</i> , <i>place</i> [ <i>in-stead of</i> ].             |
| <i>sēo dǾēd</i> , <i>deed.</i>                                     | (u-STEMS.)   |
| <i>sē dǾēl</i> , <i>part</i> [ <i>a great deal</i> ].              | <i>sēo flōr</i> , <i>floor</i>                                     |
| <i>Ǿā Dene</i> , <i>Danes.</i>                                     | <i>sēo nosu</i> , <i>nose.</i>                                     |
| <i>sē frēondscipe</i> , <i>friendship.</i>                         | <i>sē sumor</i> ( <i>G. sumeres, D. sumera</i> ), <i>summer.</i>   |
| <i>sēo hȳd</i> , <i>skin, hide.</i>                                | <i>sē winter</i> ( <i>G. wintres, D. wintera</i> ), <i>winter.</i> |
| <i>Ǿā lōndlēode</i> , <i>natives.</i>                              | <i>sē wudu</i> , <i>wood, forest.</i>                              |
| <i>Ǿā Mierce</i> , <i>Mercians.</i>                                |  |
| <i>Ǿā Rōmware</i> , <i>Romans.</i>                                 |  |

NOTE. — The numerous masculine nouns ending in *-hād*, — *cildhād* (*childhood*), *wifhād* (*womanhood*), — belong to the *u*-stems historically; but they have all passed over to the *a*-Declension.

55.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Ðā Seaxe habbað ðæs dēores hȳd on ðām wuda.  
 2. Hwā hæfð ðā giefa? 3. Ðā Mierce hīe<sup>1</sup> habbað.  
 4. Hwær is ðæs Wēales fugol? 5. Ðā Dene hiene habbað.  
 6. Hwær sindon hiera winas? 7. Hīe sindon on ðæs cyninges wuda.  
 8. Ða Rōmware onð ðā Seaxe hæfdon ðā gāras onð ðā geocu.  
 9. Hēo is on ðām hūse on wintra, onð on ðām feldum on sumera.  
 10. Hwær is ðæs hofes duru? 11. Hēo<sup>2</sup> (= sēo duru) nis hēr.

II. 1. His friends have the bones of the seals and the bodies of the Danes.  
 2. Art thou the king's son? 3. Has she her gifts in her hands?  
 4. Here are the fields of the natives.  
 5. Who had the bird? 6. I had it.<sup>2</sup> 7. The child had the worm in his fingers.  
 8. The Mercians were here during (the) summer (on + dat.).



CHAPTER X.

PRESENT INDICATIVE ENDINGS OF STRONG VERBS.

56. The unchanged stem of the present indicative may always be found by dropping **-an** of the infinitive: **fēall-an**, to fall; **cēos-an**, to choose; **bīd-an**, to abide.

57. The personal endings are:

|                    |                   |   |     |
|--------------------|-------------------|---|-----|
| <i>Sing.</i> 1. -e | <i>Plur.</i> 1. } | } | -að |
| 2. -est            | 2.                |   |     |
| 3. -eð             | 3.                |   |     |

<sup>1</sup> See § 21, (1)

<sup>2</sup> Pronouns agree in gender with the nouns for which they stand. **Hit**, however, sometimes stands for inanimate things of both masculine and feminine genders. See Wülfing (*l. c.*) I, § 238.

*i-Umlaut.*

**58.** The 2d and 3d singular endings were originally not **-est** and **-eð**, but **-is** and **-ið**; and the **i** of these older endings has left its traces upon almost every page of Early West Saxon literature. This **i**, though unaccented and soon displaced, exerted a powerful back influence upon the vowel of the preceding accented syllable. This influence, a form of regressive assimilation, is known as **i-umlaut** (pronounced *oʊm-lout*). The vowel **i** or **j** (= *y*), being itself a palatal, succeeded in palatalizing every guttural vowel that preceded it, and in imposing still more of the **i**-quality upon diphthongs that were already palatal.<sup>1</sup> The changes produced were these:

|           |        |           |   |
|-----------|--------|-----------|---|
| <b>a</b>  | became | ę (æ):    | <b>męnn</b> (< *mann-iz), <i>men</i> .                                |
| <b>ā</b>  | “      | <b>ǣ</b>  | <b>ǣnig</b> (< *ān-ig), <i>any</i>                                    |
| <b>u</b>  | “      | <b>y</b>  | <b>wyllen</b> (< *wull-in), <i>woollen</i> .                          |
| <b>ū</b>  | “      | <b>ȳ</b>  | <b>mȳs</b> (< *mūs-iz), <i>mice</i>                                   |
| <b>o</b>  | “      | ę         | <b>dehter</b> (< *doht-r-i), <i>to or for the daughter</i> .          |
| <b>ō</b>  | “      | <b>ē</b>  | <b>fēt</b> (< *fōt-iz), <i>feet</i> .                                 |
| <b>ea</b> | “      | <b>ie</b> | <b>wieẏð</b> (< *weax-ið), <i>he grows</i> ( <b>weaxan</b> =to grow). |
| <b>ēa</b> | “      | <b>īe</b> | <b>hīewð</b> (< *hēaw-ið), <i>he hews</i> ( <b>hēawan</b> =to hew).   |
| <b>eo</b> | “      | <b>ie</b> | <b>wiercan</b> (< *weorc-jan), <i>to work</i> .                       |
| <b>ēo</b> | “      | <b>īe</b> | <b>liehtan</b> (< *līoht-jan), <i>to light</i>                        |

**The Unchanged Present Indicative.**

**59.** In the Northumbrian and Mercian dialects, as well as in the dialect of Late West Saxon, the 2d and 3d singular endings were usually joined to the present

---

<sup>1</sup> The *palatal* vowels and diphthongs were long or short **æ**, **e**, **i**, (**ie**), **y**, **ea**, **eo**; the *guttural* vowels were long or short **a**, **o**, **u**.

stem without modification either of the stem itself or of the personal endings. The complete absence of unlauded forms in the present indicative of Mn.E. is thus accounted for.

In Early West Saxon, however, such forms as the following are comparatively rare in the 2d and 3d singular :

|                 |                              |                            |                          |
|-----------------|------------------------------|----------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> 1. | ic-feall-e ( <i>I fall</i> ) | cēos-e ( <i>I choose</i> ) | bīd-e ( <i>I abide</i> ) |
| 2.              | ǣū feall-est                 | cēos-est                   | bīd-est                  |
| 3.              | hē feall-eð                  | cēos-eð                    | bīd-eð                   |
| <i>Plur.</i> 1. | wē                           |                            |                          |
| 2.              | gē                           | } feall-að                 | cēos-að                  |
| 3.              | hīe                          |                            |                          |

#### The Present Indicative with *i*-Umlaut and Contraction.

**60.** The 2d and 3d persons singular are distinguished from the other forms of the present indicative in Early West Saxon by (1) *i*-umlaut of the vowel of the stem, (2) syncope of the vowel of the ending, giving *-st* and *-ð* for *-est* and *-eð*, and (3) contraction of *-st* and *-ð* with the final consonant or consonants of the stem.

#### Contraction.

**61.** The changes produced by *i*-umlaut have been already discussed. By these changes, therefore, the stems of the 2d and 3d singular indicative of such verbs as (1) *stōndan* (= *standan*), *to stand*, (2) *cuman*, *to come*, (3) *grōwan*, *to grow*, (4) *brūcan*, *to enjoy*, (5) *blāwan*, *to blow*, (6) *feallan*, *to fall*, (7) *hēawan*, *to hew*, (8) *weorpan*, *to throw*, and (9) *cēosan*, *to choose*,

become respectively (1) **stęnd-**,<sup>1</sup> (2) **cym-**, (3) **gręw-**, (4) **bręc-**, (5) **blęw-**, (6) **fiell-**, (7) **hęw-**, (8) **wierp-**, and (9) **cęs-**.

If the unchanged stem contains the vowel **e**, this is changed in the 2d and 3d singular to **i** (**ie**): **cweđan** to *say*, stem **cwiđ-**; **beran** to *bear*, stem **bier-**. But this mutation<sup>2</sup> had taken place long before the period of O.E., and belongs to the Germanic languages in general. It is best, however, to class the change of **e** to **i** or **ie** with the changes due to umlaut, since it occurs consistently in the 2d and 3d singular stems of Early West Saxon, and outlasted almost all of the umlaut forms proper.

If, now, the syncopated endings **-st** and **-đ** are added directly to the unlauded stem, there will frequently result such a massing of consonants as almost to defy pronunciation: **cwiđ-st**, *thou sayest*; **stęnd-st**, *thou standest*, etc. Some sort of contraction, therefore, is demanded for the sake of euphony. The ear and eye will, by a little practice, become a sure guide in these contractions. The following rules, however, must be observed. They apply only to the 2d and 3d singular of the present indicative :

<sup>1</sup> The more common form for stems with **a** is **ę** rather than **ę**: **faran**, to *go*, 2d and 3d singular stem **fęer-**; **sacan**, to *contend*, stem **sęęc-**. Indeed, **a** changes to **ę** via **ę** (Cosijn, *Altwestsächsische Grammatik*, I, § 32).

<sup>2</sup> Umlaut is frequently called Mutation. Metaphony is still another name for the same phenomenon. The term Metaphony has the advantage of easy adjectival formation (metaphonic). It was proposed by Professor Victor Henry (*Comparative Grammar of English and German*, Paris, 1894), but has not been naturalized.



(1) If the stem ends in a double consonant, one of the consonants is dropped:

- |                              |                              |                              |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. feall-e ( <i>I fall</i> ) | 1. winn-e ( <i>I fight</i> ) | 1. swimm-e ( <i>I swim</i> ) |
| 2. fiel-st                   | 2. win-st                    | 2. swim-st                   |
| 3. fiel-ð                    | 3. win-ð                     | 3. swim-ð                    |

(2) If the stem ends in **-ð**, this is dropped:

- |                            |                                |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. cweð-e ( <i>I say</i> ) | 1. weorð-e ( <i>I become</i> ) |
| 2. cwi-st                  | 2. wier-st                     |
| 3. cwi-ð                   | 3. wier-ð                      |

(3) If the stem ends in **-a**, this is changed to **-t**. The **-ð** of the ending is then also changed to **-t**, and usually absorbed. Thus the stem of the 2d singular serves as stem and ending for the 3d singular:

- |   |                             |
|---|-----------------------------|
| 1. stōnd-e (= stand-e) ( <i>I stand</i> ) | 1. bind-e ( <i>I bind</i> ) |
| 2. stent-st                               | 2. bint-st                  |
| 3. stent                                  | 3. bint                     |
| 1. bīd-e ( <i>I abide</i> )               | 1. rīd-e ( <i>I ride</i> )  |
| 2. bīt-st                                 | 2. rīt-st                   |
| 3. bīt (-t)                               | 3. rīt (-t)                 |

(4) If the stem ends already in **-t**, the endings are added as in (3), **-ð** being again changed to **-t** and absorbed:

- |                               |                               |                            |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. brēot-e ( <i>I break</i> ) | 1. feoht-e ( <i>I fight</i> ) | 1. bīt-e ( <i>I bite</i> ) |
| 2. brīet-st                   | 2. fieht-st                   | 2. bīt-st                  |
| 3. brīet (-t)                 | 3. fieht                      | 3. bīt (-t)                |

(5) If the stem ends in **-s**, this is dropped before **-st** (to avoid **-sst**), but is retained before **-ð**, the latter being changed to **-t**. Thus the 2d and 3d singulars are identical:<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> This happens also when the infinitive stem ends in **st**:

- |                               |
|-------------------------------|
| 1. berst-e ( <i>I burst</i> ) |
| 2. bier-st                    |
| 3. bierst.                    |

|                               |                            |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. cēos-e ( <i>I choose</i> ) | 1. rīs-e ( <i>I rise</i> ) |
| 2. cīe-st                     | 2. rī-st                   |
| 3. cīes-t                     | 3. rīs-t                   |

## 62.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Sē cyning fiēð. 2. Ðā wif cēosað ðā giefra. 3. Ðū stęntst on ðām hūse. 4. Hē wierpð ðæt wāpen 5. Sē secg hīewð ðā lic. 6. Ðæt sād grēwð qnd wiexð (*Mark* iv. 27). 7. Ic stęnde hēr, qnd ðū stęntst ðær. 8. "Ic hit eom," cwið hē. 9. Hīe berað ðæs wulfes bān. 10. Hē hīe bint, qnd ic hine binde. 11. Ne rītst ðū?

II. 1. We shall bind him. 2. Who chooses the child's gifts? 3. "He was not here," says she. 4. Wilt thou remain in the hall? 5. The wolves are biting (= bite) the fishermen. 6. He enjoys<sup>1</sup> the love of his children. 7. Do you enjoy (= Enjoyest thou) the consolation and friendship of the scribe? 8. Will he come? 9. I shall throw the spear, and thou wilt bear the weapons. 10. The king's son will become king. 11. The army (*worod*) is breaking the doors and walls of the house.



## CHAPTER XI.

## THE CONSONANT DECLENSIONS OF NOUNS.

The Weak or *n*-Declension.

63. The *n*-Declension contains almost all of the O.E. nouns belonging to the Consonant Declensions. The stem characteristic *n* has been preserved in the oblique

---

<sup>1</sup> *Brūcan*, *to enjoy*, takes the genitive case, not the accusative. It means "to have joy of anything."

cases, so that there is no difficulty in distinguishing *n*-stems from the preceding vowel stems.

The *n*-Declension includes (*a*) masculines, (*b*) feminines, and (*c*) neuters. The masculines far outnumber the feminines, and the neuters contain only *ēage*, *eye* and *ēare*, *ear*. The masculines end in *-a*, the feminines and neuters in *-e*.

64. Paradigms of (*a*) *sē hunta*, *hunter*; (*b*) *sēo tunge*, *tongue*; (*c*) *ðæt ēage*, *eye*:

|                 |                 |                 |                |
|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|----------------|
| <i>Sing N.</i>  | <i>hunt-a</i>   | <i>tung-e</i>   | <i>ēag-e</i>   |
| <i>G.D I.</i>   | <i>hunt-an</i>  | <i>tung-an</i>  | <i>ēag-an</i>  |
| <i>A.</i>       | <i>hunt-an</i>  | <i>tung-an</i>  | <i>ēag-e</i>   |
| <i>Plur N.A</i> | <i>hunt-an</i>  | <i>tung-an</i>  | <i>ēag-an</i>  |
| <i>G.</i>       | <i>hunt-ena</i> | <i>tung-ena</i> | <i>ēag-ena</i> |
| <i>D I.</i>     | <i>hunt-um</i>  | <i>tung-um</i>  | <i>ēag-um</i>  |

65. VOCABULARY.

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <i>sē adesa</i> , <i>hatchet</i> , <i>adze</i> .               | <i>sē mōna</i> , <i>moon</i> .  |
| <i>sē āmetta</i> , <i>leisure</i> [empt-iness].                | <i>sēo nādre</i> , <i>adder</i> [a nadder > an adder <sup>2</sup> ]                                     |
| <i>sē bōna (bana)</i> , <i>murderer</i> [bane]                 | <i>sē oxa</i> , <i>ox</i> .   |
| <i>sēo cirice</i> , <i>church</i> [Scotch kirk]                | <i>sē scēowyrhta</i> , <i>shoe-maker</i> [shoe-wright]  |
| <i>sē cnapa</i> (later, <i>cnafa</i> ), <i>boy</i><br>[knavel] | <i>sēo sunne</i> , <i>sun</i> .   |
| <i>sē cuma</i> , <i>stranger</i> [comer]                       | <i>sē tēona</i> , <i>injury</i> [teen].   |
| <i>ðæt ēare</i> , <i>ear</i>                                   | <i>bidan</i> (with dat of person and gen. of thing <sup>3</sup> ), <i>to request</i> , <i>ask for</i> . |
| <i>sēo eorðe</i> , <i>earth</i> .                              | <i>cwelan</i> , <i>to die</i> [quail].  |
| <i>sē gefēra</i> , <i>companion</i> [co-farer].                |   |
| <i>sē guma</i> , <i>man</i> [bride-groom <sup>1</sup> ]        |   |
| <i>sēo heorte</i> , <i>heart</i> .                             |   |

<sup>1</sup> The *r* is intrusive in *-groom*, as it is in *cart-r-idge*, *part-r-idge*, *vag-r-ant*, and *hoa-r-se*

<sup>2</sup> The *n* has been appropriated by the article. Cf. *an apron* (< *a napron*), *an auger* (< *a nauger*), *an orange* (< *a norange*), *an umpire* (< *a numpire*)

<sup>3</sup> In Mn.E. we say "I request a favor of you"; but in O.E. it was

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <b>gescieppan</b> , to create [shape, land-scape, friend-ship] | <b>scęððan</b> (with dat.), to injure [scathe].         |
| <b>giefan</b> (with dat. of indirect object), to give.         | <b>wiðstōndan</b> (-standan) (with dat ), to withstand. |
| <b>healdan</b> , to hold.                                      | <b>writan</b> , to write.                               |
| <b>helpan</b> (with dat ), to help.                            |   |

## 66.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Sē scēowyrhta brȳcð his æmettan. 2. Ðā guman biddað ðæm cnapan ðæs adesan. 3. Hwā is sē cuma? 4. Hielpst ðū ðæm bōnan? 5. Ic him ne helpe. 6. Ðā bearn scęððað ðæs bōnan ēagum qnd ēarum. 7. Sē cuma cwielð on ðære cirican. 8. Sē hunta wiðstęnt ðæm wulfum. 9. Ðā oxan berað ðæs cnapan gefēran. 10. Sē mōna qnd ðā tunglu sind on ðæm heofonum. 11. Ðā huntan healdað ðære nædran tungan. 12. Hē hierie giefð ðā giefa. 13. Ðā werod scęððað ðæs cyninges feldum.

II. 1. Who will bind the mouths of the oxen? 2. Who gives him the gifts? 3. Thou art helping him, and I am injuring him. 4. The boy's companion is dying. 5. His nephew does not enjoy his leisure. 6. The adder's tongue injures the king's companion. 7. The sun is the day's eye. 8. She asks the strangers for the spears. 9. The men's bodies are not here. 10. Is he not (**Nis hē**) the child's murderer? 11. Who creates the bodies and the souls of men? 12. Thou withstandest her. 13. He is not writing.

---

“I request you (dative) of a favor” (genitive). Cf. *Cymbeline*, III, 6, 92: “We'll mannerly demand thee of thy story.”

## CHAPTER XII.

## REMNANTS OF OTHER CONSONANT DECLENSIONS.

**67.** The nouns belonging here are chiefly masculines and feminines. Their stem ended in a consonant other than **n**. The most important of them may be divided as follows: (1) The *foot* Declension, (2) **r**-Stems, and (3) **nd**-Stems. These declensions are all characterized by the prevalence, wherever possible, of **i**-umlaut in certain cases, the case ending being then dropped.

**68.** (1) The nouns belonging to the *foot* Declension exhibit umlaut most consistently in the N.A. plural.

|                   |                        |                       |                         |                       |
|-------------------|------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>Sing. N.A.</i> | sē fōt ( <i>foot</i> ) | sē mōn ( <i>man</i> ) | sē tōð ( <i>tooth</i> ) | sēo cū ( <i>cow</i> ) |
| <i>Plur. N.A.</i> | fēt                    | mēn                   | tēð                     | cȳ                    |

NOTE.—The dative singular usually has the same form as the N.A. plural. Here belong also **sēo bōc** (*book*), **sēo burg** (*borough*), **sēo gōs** (*goose*), **sēo lūs** (*louse*), and **sēo mūs** (*mouse*), all with umlauted plurals. Mn.E. preserves only six of the *foot* Declension plurals: *feet, men, teeth, geese, lice, and mice*. The *c* in the last two is an artificial spelling, intended to preserve the sound of voiceless *s*. Mn.E. *kine* (= *cy-en*) is a double plural formed after the analogy of weak stems; Burns in *The Two Dogs* uses *kye*.

No umlaut is possible in **sēo niht** (*night*) and **sē mōnað** (*month*), plural **niht** and **mōnað** (preserved in Mn.E. *twelvemonth* and *fortnight*).

(2) The **r**-Stems contain nouns expressing kinship, and exhibit umlaut of the dative singular.

|                   |                   |                    |                   |                     |                   |
|-------------------|-------------------|--------------------|-------------------|---------------------|-------------------|
| <i>Sing. N.A.</i> | sē fæder          | sē brōðor          | sēo mōdor         | sēo dohtor          | sēo swuster       |
|                   | ( <i>father</i> ) | ( <i>brother</i> ) | ( <i>mother</i> ) | ( <i>daughter</i> ) | ( <i>sister</i> ) |
| <i>D.</i>         | fæder             | brēðer             | mēder             | dehter              | swyster           |

NOTE.—The N.A. plural is usually the same as the N.A. singular. These umlaut datives are all due to the presence of a former **i**. Cf. Lat. dative singular *patri, frātri, mātri, sorori* (<\**sosori*), and Greek *θυγατρῆ*.

(3) The **nd**-Stems show umlaut both in the N.A. plural and in the dative singular:

|                   |                             |                           |
|-------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>Sing. N.A.</i> | sē frēond ( <i>friend</i> ) | sē fēond ( <i>enemy</i> ) |
| <i>D.</i>         | frīend                      | fiend                     |
| <i>Plur. N.A.</i> | frīend                      | fiend                     |

NOTE. — Mn.E. *friend* and *fiend* are interesting analogical spellings. When **s** had been added by analogy to the O.E. plurals **frīend** and **fiend**, thus giving the double plurals *friends* and *fiends*, a second singular was formed by dropping the **s**. Thus *friend* and *fiend* displaced the old singulars *frēnd* and *fēnd*, both of which occur in the M.E. *Ormulum*, written about the year 1200.

#### Summary of O.E. Declensions.

**69.** A brief, working summary of the O.E. system of declensions may now be made on the basis of gender.

All O.E. nouns are (1) masculine, (2) feminine, or (3) neuter.

(1) The masculines follow the declension of **mūð** (§ 26), except those ending in **-a**, which are declined like **hunta** (§ 64):

|                   |       |         |
|-------------------|-------|---------|
| <i>Sing. N.A.</i> | mūð   | hunta   |
| <i>G.</i>         | mūðes | huntan  |
| <i>D.I.</i>       | mūðe  | huntan  |
| <i>Plur. N.A.</i> | mūðas | huntan  |
| <i>G.</i>         | mūða  | huntena |
| <i>D.I.</i>       | mūðum | huntum  |

(2) The short-stemmed neuters follow the declension of **hof** (§ 32); the long-stemmed, that of **bearn** (§ 32):

|                   |       |         |
|-------------------|-------|---------|
| <i>Sing. N.A.</i> | hof   | bearn   |
| <i>G.</i>         | hofes | bearnes |
| <i>D.I.</i>       | hofe  | bearne  |
| <i>Plur. N.A.</i> | hofu  | bearn   |
| <i>G.</i>         | hofa  | bearna  |
| <i>D.I.</i>       | hofum | bearnum |

(3) The feminines follow the declensions of **giefu** and **wund** (§ 38) (the only difference being in the N. singular), except those ending in **-e**, which follow the declension of **tunge** (§ 64):

|                 |                           |               |                |
|-----------------|---------------------------|---------------|----------------|
| <i>Sing N.</i>  | <b>giefu</b>              | <b>wund</b>   | <b>tunge</b>   |
|                 | <i>G.</i> <b>giefe</b>    | <b>wunde</b>  | <b>tungan</b>  |
|                 | <i>D.I.</i> <b>giefe</b>  | <b>wunde</b>  | <b>tungan</b>  |
|                 | <i>A.</i> <b>giefe</b>    | <b>wunde</b>  | <b>tungan</b>  |
| <i>Plur N.A</i> | <b>giefa</b>              | <b>wunda</b>  | <b>tungan</b>  |
|                 | <i>G</i> <b>giefa</b>     | <b>wunda</b>  | <b>tungena</b> |
|                 | <i>D.I.</i> <b>giefum</b> | <b>wundum</b> | <b>tungum</b>  |

## 70.

## VOCABULARY.

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <b>ac</b> , <i>but</i> .                                | <b>findan</b> , <i>to find</i> .                  |
| <b>būtan</b> (with dat.), <i>except, but, without</i> . | <b>sē God</b> , <i>God</i> .                      |
| <b>sē Crīst</b> , <i>Christ</i> .                       | <b>hātan</b> , <i>to call, name</i> .             |
| <b>sē eorl</b> , <i>earl, alderman, warrior</i> .       | <b>sē hlāford</b> , <i>lord [hlāf-weard]</i> .    |
| <b>ðæt ƷnglaƷnd</b> , <i>England [Angles' land]</i>     | <b>mid</b> (with dat.), <i>with</i> .             |
| <b>faran</b> , <i>to go [fare]</i> .                    | <b>on</b> (with acc.), <i>on, against, into</i> . |
|   | <b>tō</b> (with dat.), <i>to</i> .                |
|   | <b>uton</b> (with infin.), <i>let us</i> .        |

NOTE.—O E **mōn (man)** is frequently used in an indefinite sense for *one, people, they* It thus takes the place of a passive construction proper: **And man nam þā gebrotu þe þār belifon, twelf cýpan fulle**, *And there were taken up of fragments that remained there twelve baskets full*, but more literally, *And one (or they) took the fragments*, etc.; **Ʒnd Hæstenes wif Ʒnd his suna twēgen mōn brōhte tō ðæm cyninge**, *And Hæsten's wife and his two sons were brought to the king*.

## 71.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Mōn hine hæt Ælfred. 2. Uton faran on ðæt scip.  
3. God is cyninga cyning Ʒnd hlāforda hlāford. 4. Sē eorl ne giefð giefa his fiend. 5. Ic næs mid his frīend. 6. Sēo mōdor færð mid hiere dehter on ðā burg. 7. Fintst ðū ðæs

bōceres bēc? 8. Hē bint ealle (all) ðā dēor būtan ðām wulfum. 9. Ðū eart Crīst, Godes sunu. 10. "Uton bindan ðæs bōnan fēt," ewið hē.

II. 1. Christ is the son of God. 2. Let us call him Cædmon. 3. He throws his spear against the door. 4. Thou art not the earl's brother. 5. He will go with his father to England, but I shall remain (abide) here. 6. Gifts are not given to murderers. 7. Who will find the tracks of the animals? 8. They ask their lord for his weapons (§ 65, Note 3).



## CHAPTER XIII.

### PRONOUNS.

#### (1) Personal Pronouns.

**72.** Paradigms of *ic, I; ðū, thou.* For *hē, hēo, hit,* see § 53.

|                     |                                 |                                  |
|---------------------|---------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>Sing. N.</i>     | ic                              | ðū                               |
| <i>G.</i>           | mīn                             | ðīn                              |
| <i>D.</i>           | mē                              | ðē                               |
| <i>A.</i>           | mē                              | ðē                               |
| <br><i>Dual N.</i>  | wit ( <i>we two</i> )           | git ( <i>ye two</i> )            |
| <i>G.</i>           | uncer ( <i>of us two</i> )      | incer ( <i>of you two</i> )      |
| <i>D.</i>           | unc ( <i>to or for us two</i> ) | inc ( <i>to or for you two</i> ) |
| <i>A.</i>           | unc ( <i>us two</i> )           | inc ( <i>you two</i> )           |
| <br><i>Plur. N.</i> | wē                              | gē                               |
| <i>G.</i>           | ūser ( <i>ūre</i> )             | ēower                            |
| <i>D.</i>           | ūs                              | ēow                              |
| <i>A.</i>           | ūs                              | ēow                              |

NOTE 1. — The dual number was soon absorbed by the plural. No relic of it now remains. But when two and only two are referred to, the dual is consistently used in O.E. An example occurs in the case



of the two blind men (*Matthew ix. 27-31*): **Gemiltsa unc, Davīdes sunu!** *Pity us, (thou) Son of David!* **Sīe inc æfter incrum gelēafan,** *Be it unto you according to your faith.*

NOTE 2. — Mn.E. *ye* (< **gē**), the nominative proper, is fast being displaced by *you* (< **ēow**), the old objective. The distinction is preserved in the King James's version of the Bible: *Ye in me, and I in you* (*John xiv 20*); but not in Shakespeare and later writers.

### (2) Demonstrative Pronouns.

**73.** Paradigm of **ðēs, ðēos, ðis**, *this*. For the Definite Article as a demonstrative, meaning *that*, see § 28, Note 3.

|                   | <i>Masculine.</i> | <i>Feminine.</i>    | <i>Neuter.</i> |
|-------------------|-------------------|---------------------|----------------|
| <i>Sing. N.</i>   | ðēs               | ðēos                | ðis            |
| <i>G.</i>         | ðisses            | ðisse               | ðisses         |
| <i>D.</i>         | ðissum            | ðisse               | ðissum         |
| <i>A.</i>         | ðisne             | ðās                 | ðis            |
| <i>I.</i>         | ðȳs               | —                   | ðȳs            |
|                   |                   | <i>All Genders.</i> |                |
| <i>Plur. N.A.</i> |                   | ðās                 |                |
| <i>G.</i>         |                   | ðissa               |                |
| <i>D.</i>         |                   | ðissum              |                |

### (3) The Interrogative Pronoun.

**74.** Paradigm of **hwā, hwæt**, *who, what?*

|                 | <i>Masculine</i> | <i>Neuter.</i> |
|-----------------|------------------|----------------|
| <i>Sing. N.</i> | hwā              | hwæt           |
| <i>G.</i>       | hwæs             | hwæs           |
| <i>D.</i>       | hwæm             | hwæm           |
| <i>A.</i>       | hwone            | hwæt           |
| <i>I.</i>       | —                | hwȳ            |

NOTE 1. — The derivative interrogatives, **hwæðer** (< \***hwā-ðer**), *which of two?* and **hwilc** (< \***hwā-lic**), *which?* are declined as strong adjectives (§§ 79-82).

NOTE 2. — The instrumental case of **hwā** survives in Mn.E. *why* = *on what account*; the instrumental of the definite article is seen in the

adverbial *the*: *The sooner, the better* = *by how much sooner, by so much better.*

NOTE 3. — How were the Mn.E. relative pronouns, *who* and *which*, evolved from the O E interrogatives? The change began in early West Saxon with **hwæt** used in indirect questions (Wūlfing, *l.c.* § 310, β): **Nū ic wāt eall hwæt ðū woldest**, *Now I know all that thou desiredst.* The direct question was, **Hwæt woldest ðū?** But the presence of **eall** shows that in Alfred's mind **hwæt** was, in the indirect form, more relative than interrogative.

#### (4) Relative Pronouns.

**75.** O.E. had no relative pronoun proper. It used instead (1) the Indeclinable Particle **ðe**, *who, whom, which, that*, (2) the Definite Article (§ 28), (3) the Definite Article with the Indeclinable Particle.

The forms of the Definite Article agree, of course, in gender and number with the antecedent, the case depending upon the construction. *The bird which I have* may, therefore, be expressed in three ways:

- (1) **Sē fugol ðe ic hæbbe;**
- (2) **Sē fugol ðone ic hæbbe;**
- (3) **Sē fugol ðone ðe (= the which) ic hæbbe.**

NOTE — O.E. **ðe** agrees closely in construction with Mn E relative *that*: (1) Both are indeclinable (2) Both refer to animate or inanimate objects (3) Both may be used with phrasal value: **ðy ylcandæge ðe hī hine tō ðæm āde beran wyllað**, *On the same day that (= on which) they intend to bear him to the funeral pile.* (4) Neither can be preceded by a preposition.

#### (5) Possessive Pronouns.

**76.** The Possessive Pronouns are **mīn**, *mine*; **ðīn**, *thine*; **ūre**, *our*; **ēower**, *your*; [**sīn**, *his, her, its*]; **uncer**, *belonging to us two*; **incer**, *belonging to you two.* They

are declined as strong adjectives. The genitives of the Third Personal Pronoun, *his*, *his*, *hiere*, *her*, *hiera*, *their*, are indeclinable.

#### (6) Indefinite Pronouns.

**77.** These are *ælc*, *each*, *every*; *ān*, *a*, *an*, *one*; *ænig* (<*ān-ig*), *any*; *nænig* (<*ne-ænig*), *none*; *ōðer*, *other*; *sum*, *one*, *a certain one*; *swilc*, *such*. They are declined as strong adjectives.

NOTE. — O E. had three established methods of converting an interrogative pronoun into an indefinite: (1) By prefixing *ge*, (2) by prefixing *æg*, (3) by interposing the interrogative between *swā* . . . *swā*: (1) *gehwā*, *each*; *gehwæðer*, *either*; *gehwilc*, *each*; (2) *æghwā*, *each*; *æghwæðer*, *each*; *æghwilc*, *each*; (3) *swā hwā swā*, *whosoever*, *swā hwæðer swā*, *whichever of two*; *swā hwilc swā*, *whosoever*.



## CHAPTER XIV.

### ADJECTIVES, STRONG AND WEAK.

**78.** The declension of adjectives conforms in general to the declension of nouns, though a few pronominal inflections have influenced certain cases. Adjectives belong either to (1) the Strong Declension or to (2) the Weak Declension. The Weak Declension is employed when the adjective is preceded by *sē* or *ðēs*, *the*, *that*, or *this*; otherwise, the Strong Declension is employed: *ðā gōðan cyningas*, *the good kings*; *ðēs gōða cyning*, *this good king*; but *gōðe cyningas*, *good kings*.

NOTE. — The Weak Declension is also frequently used when the adjective is employed in direct address, or preceded by a possessive

pronoun: **Dryhten, ælmihtiga God . . . ic bidde ðē for ðīnre miclan mildheortnesse**, *Lord, almighty God, I pray thee, for thy great mercy.*

(1) Strong Declension of Adjectives.

(a) *Monosyllables.*

**79.** The strong adjectives are chiefly monosyllabic with long stems: **gōd**, *good*; **eald**, *old*; **lōng**, *long*; **swift**, *swift*. They are declined as follows.

**80.** Paradigm of **gōd**, *good*:

|                   | <i>Masculine.</i> | <i>Feminine.</i> | <i>Neuter.</i> |
|-------------------|-------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <i>Sing. N.</i>   | gōd               | gōd              | gōd            |
| <i>G.</i>         | gōdes             | gōdre            | gōdes          |
| <i>D.</i>         | gōdum             | gōdre            | gōdum          |
| <i>A.</i>         | gōdne             | gōde             | gōd            |
| <i>I.</i>         | gōde              | —                | gōde           |
| <i>Plur. N.A.</i> | gōde              | gōda             | gōd            |
| <i>G.</i>         | gōdra             | gōdra            | gōdra          |
| <i>D.I.</i>       | gōdum             | gōdum            | gōdum          |

**81.** If the stem is short, **-u** is retained as in **giefu** (§ 39, (1)) and **hofu** (§ 33, (1)). Thus **glæd** (§ 27, Note 1), *glad*, and **til**, *useful*, are inflected:

|                   | <i>Masculine.</i> | <i>Feminine</i> | <i>Neuter.</i> |
|-------------------|-------------------|-----------------|----------------|
| <i>Sing. N.</i>   | { glæd<br>til     | gladu<br>tilu   | glæd<br>til    |
| <i>Plur. N.A.</i> | { glade<br>tile   | glada<br>tila   | gladu<br>tilu  |

(b) *Polysyllables.*

**82.** Polysyllables follow the declension of short monosyllables. The most common terminations are **-en**, *-en*; **-fæst**, *-fast*; **-full**, *-ful*; **-lēas**, *-less*; **-lic**, *-ly*; **-ig**, *-y*: **hæð-en** (hæð = *heath*), *heathen*; **stēde-fæst** (stēde

= *place*), *steadfast*, **sorg-full** (**sorg** = *sorrow*), *sorrowful*, **cyst-lēas** (**cyst** = *worth*), *worthless*, **eorð-līc** (**eorðe** = *earth*), *earthly*; **blōd-ig** (**blōd** = *blood*), *bloody*. The present and past participles, when inflected and not as weak adjectives, may be classed with the polysyllabic adjectives, their inflection being the same.

Syncoption occurs as in a-stems (§ 27, (4)). Thus **hālig**, *holy*, **blīðe**, *blithe*, **berende**, *bearing*, **geboren**, *born*, are thus inflected:

|                   | <i>Masculine.</i> | <i>Feminine.</i> | <i>Neuter.</i> |
|-------------------|-------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <i>Sing. N.</i>   | { hālig           | hālgū            | hālig          |
|                   | { blīðe           | blīðu            | blīðe          |
|                   | { berende         | berendu          | berende        |
|                   | { geboren         | geborenu         | geboren        |
| <i>Plur. N.A.</i> | { hālge           | hālga            | hālgū          |
|                   | { blīðe           | blīða            | blīðu          |
|                   | { berende         | berenda          | berendu        |
|                   | { geborene        | geborena         | geborenu       |

## (2) Weak Declension of Adjectives.

**83.** The Weak Declension of adjectives, whether monosyllabic or polysyllabic, does not differ from the Weak Declension of nouns, except that **-ena** of the genitive plural is usually replaced by **-ra** of the strong adjectives.

|                            | <i>Masculine.</i> | <i>Feminine.</i>   | <i>Neuter</i> |
|----------------------------|-------------------|--------------------|---------------|
| <b>84.</b> <i>Sing. N.</i> | gōða              | gōde               | gōde          |
| <i>G.</i>                  | gōðan             | gōðan              | gōðan         |
| <i>D.I</i>                 | gōðan             | gōðan              | gōðan         |
| <i>A.</i>                  | gōðan             | gōðan              | gōde          |
|                            |                   | <i>All Genders</i> |               |
| <i>Plur. N.A</i>           |                   | gōðan              |               |
| <i>G.</i>                  |                   | gōðra (gōðena)     |               |
| <i>D.I</i>                 |                   | gōðum              |               |

## 85.

## RULE OF SYNTAX.

*Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case; but participles, when used predicatively, may remain uninflected (§ 138, § 140).*

## 86.

## VOCABULARY.

dēad, *dead.*

eall, *all.*

hāl,<sup>1</sup> *whole, hale.*

heard, *hard.*

ðæt hors, *horse.*

lēof, *dear [as lief].*

lȳtel, *little*

micel, *great, large.*

mōnig, *many*

niman, *to take [nimble, numb].*

nīwe, *new.*

rīce, *rich, powerful*

sōð, *true [sooth-sayer].*

stælwierðe,<sup>2</sup> *serviceable [stalwart]*

swiðe, *very*

sē tūn, *town, village.*

sē ðegn, *servant, thane, warrior.*

ðæt ðing, *thing*

sē weg, *way*

wīs, *wise*

wið (with acc.), *against, in a hostile sense [with-stand].*

sē ilca, *the same [of that ilk].*

## 87.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Ðās scipu ne sind swiðe swift, ac hīe sind swiðe stælwierðu. 2. Sēo gōde cwēn giefð ælcum ðegne mōniga giefra. 3. Ðēs wīsa cyning hæfð mōnige mīcele tūnas on his rīce 4. Nænig mōn is wīs on eallum ðingum 5. Ðȳ ilcan dæge (§ 98, (2)) mōn fōnd (found) ðone ðegn ðe mīnes wines bēc hæfde. 6. Ealle ðā sēegas ðā ðe swift hors habbað rīdað wið ðone bōnan. 7. Ðīne fīend sind mīne

<sup>1</sup> **Hālig**, *holy*, contains, of course, the same root. "I find," says Carlyle, "that you could not get any better definition of what 'holy' really is than 'healthy — completely healthy.'"

<sup>2</sup> This word has been much discussed. The older etymologists explained it as meaning *worth stealing*. A more improbable conjecture is that it means *worth a stall or place*. It is used of ships in the *Anglo-Saxon Chronicle*. As applied to men, Skeat thinks it meant *good or worthy at stealing*; but the etymology is still unsettled.

friend. 8. Sē micela stān ðone ðe ic on mīnum hōndum hǣbbe is swīðe heard. 9. Hīe scēððað ðǣm ealdum horsum. 10. Uton niman ðās tilan giefa qnd hīe beran tō ūrum lēofum bearnum.

II. 1. These holy men are wise and good. 2. Are the little children very dear to the servants (dat. without **tō**)? 3. Gifts are not given (§ 70, Note 1) to rich men. 4. All the horses that are in the king's fields are swift 5. These stones are very large and hard. 6. He takes the dead man's spear and fights against the large army. 7. This new house has many doors. 8. My ways are not your ways. 9. Whosoever chooses me, him I also (**ēac**) choose. 10. Every man has many friends that are not wise.



## CHAPTER XV.

### NUMERALS.

**88.** Numerals are either (*a*) Cardinal, expressing pure number, *one, two, three*; or (*b*) Ordinal, expressing rank or succession, *first, second, third*.

#### (*a*) Cardinals.

**89.** The Cardinals fall into the three following syntactic groups:

#### GROUP I.

1. ān
2. twēgen [twain]
3. ðrie

These numerals are inflected adjectives. **Ān**, *one, an*, *a*, being a long stemmed monosyllable, is declined like **gōd** (§ 80). The weak form, **āna**, means *alone*.

**Twēgen** and **ðrie**, which have no singular, are thus declined :

|                  | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem</i> | <i>Neut.</i> | <i>Masc</i> | <i>Fem</i> | <i>Neut.</i> |
|------------------|--------------|------------|--------------|-------------|------------|--------------|
| <i>Plur. N A</i> | twēgen       | twā        | twā (tū)     | ðrie        | ðrēo       | ðrēo         |
| <i>G.</i>        | twēgra       | twēgra     | twēgra       | ðrēora      | ðrēora     | ðrēora       |
| <i>D</i>         | { twām       | { twām     | { twām       | { ðrīm      | { ðrīm     | { ðrīm       |
|                  | (twām)       | (twām)     | (twām)       |             |            |              |

## 90.

## GROUP II.

|              |                 |
|--------------|-----------------|
| 4. fēower    | 12. twelf       |
| 5. fif       | 13. ðrēotiene   |
| 6. siex      | 14. fēowertiene |
| 7. seofon    | 15. fiftiene    |
| 8. eahta     | 16. siextiene   |
| 9. nigon     | 17. seofontiene |
| 10. tien     | 18. eahtatiene  |
| 11. ęndlefan | 19. nigontiene  |

These words are used chiefly as uninflected adjectives: **on gewitscipe ðrēora oppe fēower bisceopa**, *on testimony of three or four bishops*; **on siex dagum**, *in six days*; **ān nǣdre ðe hǣfde nigon hǣafðu**, *a serpent which had nine heads*; **ǣðeling eahtatiene wintra**, *a prince of eighteen winters*.

## 91.

## GROUP III

|                    |                  |
|--------------------|------------------|
| 20. twēntig        | 80. hundeahtatig |
| 21. ān ęnd twēntig | 90. hundnigontig |
| 30. ðrītig         | 100. hund        |
| 40. fēowertig      | 200. twā hund    |
| 50. fiftig         | 1000. ðūsend     |
| 60. siextig        | 2000. twā ðūsend |
| 70. hundseofontig  |                  |

All these numbers are employed as neuter singular nouns, and are followed by the genitive plural: **Nǣfde hē þeah mā ðonne twēntig hrýðera**, and **twēntig scēapa**, and



**twēntig swȳna**, *He did not have, however, more than twenty (of) cattle, and twenty (of) sheep, and twenty (of) swine*; **Hīe hæfdon hundehtatig scipa**, *They had eighty ships*; **twā hund mīla brād**, *two hundred miles broad*; **ðær wæron seofon hund gūðfanena genumen**, *there were seven hundred standards captured*; **ān ðūsend mōnna**, *a thousand men*; **Hannibales folces wæs twā ðūsend ofslagen**, *Of Hannibal's men there were two thousand slain*; **Hīe ācuron eñdlefan ðūsend mōnna**, *They chose eleven thousand men*.

NOTE 1. — Group III is rarely inflected. Almost the only inflectional endings that are added are (1) **-es**, a genitive singular termination for the numerals in **-tig**, and (2) **-e**, a dative singular for **hund** (1) The first is confined to adjectives expressing extent of space or time, as, **eald**, *old*; **brād**, *broad*; **hēah**, *high*; and **lōng**, *long*: **ðæt is ðrītiges mīla lōng**, *that is thirty miles long*; **Hē wæs ðrītiges gēara eald**, *He was thirty years old* (2) The second is employed after **mid**: **mid twāem hunde scipa**, *with two hundred ships*, **mid ðrīm hunde mōnna**, *with three hundred men*, **ðær wearð . . . Regulus gefangen mid V hunde mōnna**, *There was Regulus captured with five hundred men*.

The statement made in nearly all the grammars that **hunde** occurs as a nominative and accusative plural is without foundation.

NOTE 2 — Many numerals, otherwise indeclinable, are used in the genitive plural with the indefinite pronoun **sum**, which then means *one of* a certain number. In this peculiar construction, the numeral always precedes **sum**: **fēowera sum**, *one of four (= with three others)*; **Hē sǣde þæt hē syxa sum ofslōge syxtig**, *He said that he, with five others, slew sixty (whales)*; **Hē wæs fēowertigra sum**, *He was one of forty*.

NOTE 3 — These are the most common constructions with the Cardinals. The forms in **-tig** have only recently been investigated. A study of Wūlfing's citations shows that Alfred occasionally uses the forms in **-tig** (1) as adjectives with plural inflections: **mid XXXgum cyningum**, *with thirty kings*; and (2) as nouns with plural inflections: **æfter siextigum daga**, *after sixty days*. But both constructions are rare.

*(b) Ordinals.*

**92.** The Ordinals, except the first two, are formed from the Cardinals. They are:

|                          |                       |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. forma, āresta, fyrsta | 11. endlefta          |
| 2. oðer, æfterra         | 12. twelfta           |
| 3. ðridda                | 13. ðreotēoða         |
| 4. fēorða                | 14. fēowertēoða       |
| 5. fifta                 | 15. fiftēoða          |
| 6. siexta                | etc.                  |
| 7. seofoda               | 20. twēntigoða        |
| 8. eahtoða               | 21. ān qnd twēntigoða |
| 9. nigoða                | 30. ðritigoða         |
| 10. tēoða                | etc.                  |

NOTE.—There are no Ordinals corresponding to **hund** and **ðūsend**.

With the exception of **oðer** (§ 77), all the Ordinals are declined as Weak Adjectives; the article, however, as in Mn.E., is frequently omitted: **Brūtus wæs sē forma consul**, *Brutus was the first consul*; **Hēr eṇdað sēo āreste bōc, qnd onginneð sēo oðer**, *Here the first book ends, and the second begins*; **ðy fiftan dæge**, *on the fifth day*; **on ðæm tēoðan gēare hiera gewinnes**, *on the tenth year of their strife*; **Hēo wæs twelfte**, *She was twelfth*; **Sē wæs fēorða from Augusto**, *He was fourth from Augustus*.



## CHAPTER XVI.

## ADVERBS, PREPOSITIONS, AND CONJUNCTIONS.

## Adverbs.

**93.** (1) Adverbs are formed by adding **-e** or **-lice** to the corresponding adjectives: **sōð**, *true*; **sōðe** or **sōðlice**, *truly*; **earnlic**, *wretched*; **earnlice**, *wretchedly*; **wīd**,

*wide*; **wīde**, *widely*; **micel**, *great*; **micle** (*micelle*), *greatly*, *much*.

(2) The terminations **-e** and **-lice** are replaced in some adverbs by **-unga** or **-inga**: **eallunga**, *entirely*; **færinga**, *suddenly*; **grundlunga**, *from the ground, completely*.

NOTE 1.—The **l** is intrusive in the last adverb. In Mn.E. *headlong*, originally an adverb, we have not only a similar intrusive *l*, but the only survival of O E. **-unga**.

(3) The genitive case is frequently used adverbially: **sūðewardes**, *southwards*; **ealles**, *altogether, entirely*; **dæges**, *by day*; **nihtes**, *by night*; **ðæs**, *from that time, afterwards*. Cf. **hys** (= *his*) **weges** in **Ðonne rīdeð ælc hys weg**, *Then rides each his way*.

NOTE 2.—The adverbial genitive is abundantly preserved in Mn E. *Always, crossways, sideways, needs* (= *necessarily*), *sometimes*, etc., are not plurals, but old genitive singulars. The same construction is seen in *of course, of a truth, of an evening, of old, of late*, and similar phrases.

(4) Dative and instrumental plurals may be used as adverbs: **hwīlum**, *at times, sometimes* [*whilom*]; **stundum** (**stund** = *period*), *from time to time*; **miclum**, *greatly*. Especially common is the suffix **-mælum** (**mæ**l = *time* [*meal*]), preserved adverbially in Mn.E. *piecemeal*: **dropmælum**, *drop by drop*; **styccemælum** (**stycce** = *piece*), *piecemeal, here and there*.

(5) The suffix **-an** usually denotes motion from:

|                             |                                 |   |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|---|
| <b>hēr</b> , <i>here</i>    | <b>hider</b> , <i>hither</i> .  | <b>heonan</b> , <i>hence</i> .          |
| <b>ðær</b> , <i>there</i> . | <b>ðider</b> , <i>thither</i> . | <b>ðōnan</b> , <i>thence</i> .          |
| <b>hwær</b> , <i>where?</i> | <b>hwider</b> , <i>whither?</i> | <b>hwōnan</b> , <i>whence?</i>          |
|                             |                                 | <b>norðan</b> , <i>from the north</i> . |
|                             |                                 | <b>ēastan</b> , <i>from the east</i> .  |
|                             |                                 | <b>hindan</b> , <i>from behind</i> .    |
|                             |                                 | <b>feorran</b> , <i>from far</i> .      |
|                             |                                 | <b>ūtan</b> , <i>from without</i> .     |

(6) The adverb **rihte** (**riht**=*right, straight*) denotes *motion toward* in **norðrihte**, *northward, due north*; **ēastrihte**, *due east*; **sūðrihte**, *due south*; **westrihte**, *due west*.

### Prepositions.

**94.** The nominative is the only case in O.E. that is never governed by a preposition. Of the other cases, the dative and accusative occur most frequently with prepositions.

(1) The prepositions that are most frequently found with the dative are:

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <b>æfter</b> , <i>after.</i>                      | <b>frōm</b> ( <b>fram</b> ), <i>from, by.</i> |
| <b>æt</b> , <i>at</i>                             | <b>mid</b> , <i>with</i>                      |
| <b>be</b> ( <b>bī</b> ), <i>by, near, about</i>   | <b>of</b> , <i>of, from</i>                   |
| <b>betwēonan</b> ( <b>betuh</b> ), <i>between</i> | <b>tō</b> , <i>to.</i>                        |
| <b>būtan</b> ( <b>būton</b> ), <i>except.</i>     | <b>tōforan</b> , <i>before.</i>               |
| <b>for</b> , <i>for.</i>                          | <b>tōweard</b> , <i>toward.</i>               |

(2) The following prepositions require the accusative:

|                                   |                                    |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <b>geond</b> , <i>throughout.</i> | <b>ðurh</b> , <i>through.</i>      |
| <b>ofer</b> , <i>over, upon.</i>  | <b>ymbe</b> , <i>about, around</i> |
| <b>oð</b> , <i>until, up to.</i>  |                                    |

(3) The preposition **on** (rarely **in**), meaning *into*, is usually followed by the accusative; but meaning *in, on, or during*, it takes the dative or instrumental. The preposition **wið**, meaning *toward*, may be followed by the genitive, dative, or accusative; but meaning *against*, and implying *motion* or *hostility*, the accusative is more common.

(4) The following phrases are used prepositionally with the dative:

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>be norðan, north of<br/>         be ēastan, east of<br/>         be sūðan, south of.<br/>         be westan, west of.</p> | <p>tō ēacan, in addition to<br/>         on emnlang (efn-lang = evenly long), along<br/>         tō emnes, along</p> |
|--|--|

(5) Prepositions regularly precede the noun or pronoun that they introduce; but by their adverbial nature they are sometimes drawn in front of the verb: **And him wæs mycel mēnegu tō gegaderod**, *And there was gathered unto him a great multitude.* In relative clauses introduced by ðe, the preceding position is very common: **sēo scīr . . . ðe hē on būde**, *the district, . . . which he dwelt in (= which he in-habited)*; **Hē wæs swyðe spēdig man on ðæm æhtum ðe hiera spēda on bēoð**, *He was a very rich man in those possessions which their riches consist in*; **nȳhst ðæm tūne ðe sē dēada man on līð**, *nearest the town that the dead man lies in.*

### Conjunctions.

95. (1) The most frequently occurring conjunctions are:

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>ac, but.<br/>         ær, before, ere.<br/>         būtan (būton), except that, unless.<br/>         ēac, also [eke]<br/>         for ðæm<br/>         for ðæm ðe,<br/>         for ðon,<br/>         for ðon ðe, } because.</p> | <p>for ðȳ, therefore.<br/>         gif, if<br/>         hwæðer, whether<br/>         ond (and), and<br/>         oððe, or<br/>         ðæt, that, so that<br/>         ðēah, though, however.</p> |
|---|---|

(2) The correlative conjunctions are:

|                |       |                        |
|----------------|-------|------------------------|
| ægðer ge . . . | . ge, | both . . . . . and.    |
| ægðer . . .    | oððer | } either . . . . . or. |
| oððe . . .     | oððe  |                        |

|                 |       |                   |                      |
|-----------------|-------|-------------------|----------------------|
| nē . . . . .    | nē,   | neither . . . . . | nor.                 |
| sam . . . . .   | sam,  | whether . . . . . | or.                  |
| swā . . . . .   | swā   | {                 | the . . . . . the.   |
|                 |       |                   | as . . . . . as.     |
| ðā . . . . .    | ðā    | }                 | when . . . . . then. |
| ðonne . . . . . | ðonne |                   |                      |



## CHAPTER XVII.

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS.

## Adjectives.

96. (1) Adjectives are regularly compared by adding *-ra* for the comparative, and *-ost* (rarely *-est*) for the superlative :

| <i>Positive.</i>    | <i>Comparative.</i> | <i>Superlative.</i> |
|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| earm, <i>poor</i>   | earmra              | earmost             |
| rīce, <i>rich</i>   | rīcra               | rīcost              |
| smæl, <i>narrow</i> | smæltra             | smalost             |
| brād, <i>broad</i>  | brādra (brædra)     | brādost             |
| swift, <i>swift</i> | swiftra             | swiftost            |

(2) Forms with *i*-umlaut usually have superlative in *-est* :

| <i>Positive.</i>      | <i>Comparative.</i> | <i>Superlative.</i> |
|-----------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| eald, <i>old</i>      | ieldra              | ieldest             |
| lōng, <i>long</i>     | lēngra              | lēngest             |
| strōng, <i>strong</i> | strēngra            | strēngest           |
| geong, <i>young</i>   | giengra             | giengest            |
| hēah, <i>high</i>     | hierra              | hiēhst              |

(3) The following adjectives are compared irregularly :

| Positive                     | Comparative   | Superlative   |
|------------------------------|---------------|---------------|
| <b>gōd</b> , good            | <b>bętra</b>  | <b>bętst</b>  |
| <b>lętel</b> , little, small | <b>lęssa</b>  | <b>lęst</b>   |
| <b>micel</b> , great, much   | <b>māra</b>   | <b>męst</b>   |
| <b>yfel</b> , bad            | <b>wiersa</b> | <b>wierst</b> |

(4) The positive is sometimes supplied by an adverb:

| Positive.           | Comparative.          | Superlative.          |
|---------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| <b>feor</b> , far   | <b>fierra</b>         | <b>fierrest</b>       |
| <b>nęah</b> , near  | <b>nęarra</b>         | <b>nęehst</b>         |
| <b>ęer</b> , before | <b>ęerra</b> , former | <b>ęerest</b> , first |

(5) The comparatives all follow the Weak Declension. The superlatives, when preceded by the definite article, are weak; but when used predicatively they are frequently strong: **sę lęsta dęel**, *the least part*; **Đonne cymeđ sę man sę đęet swiftoste hors hafađ tō đęem ęerestan dęele and tō đęem męstan**, *Then comes the man that has the swiftest horse to the first part and to the largest*. But, **đęet bęne land is ęasteward brādost** (not **brādoste**), *the cultivated land is broadest eastward*; and (hit) **biđ ealra wyrta męst**, *and it is largest of all herbs*; **Ac hyra (= hiera) ęr is męst on đęem gafole đe đęa Finnas him gylđađ**, *But their income is greatest in the tribute that the Fins pay them*.

(6) The comparative is usually followed by **đonne** and the nominative case: **Sę hwęel biđ micle lęssa đonne ođre hwalas**, *That whale is much smaller than other whales*; **Đęa wunda đęes mōdes bęođ dęigelran đonne đęa wunda đęes lichaman**, *The wounds of the mind are more secret than the wounds of the body*.

But when **đonne** is omitted, the comparative is followed by the dative: **Ūre Alęsend, đe męra is ęnd**

**mārra eallum gesceaftum**, *Our Redeemer, who is greater and more glorious than all created things*; **nē ongeat hē nō hiene selfne beþran oðrum gōdum monnum**, *nor did he consider himself better than other good men.*

#### Adverbs.

**97.** (1) Adverbs are regularly compared by adding **-or** for the comparative and **-ost** (rarely **-est**) for the superlative :

| <i>Positive.</i>                     | <i>Comparative.</i>           | <i>Superlative.</i>                   |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <b>georne</b> , <i>willingly</i>     | <b>geornor</b>                | <b>geornost</b>                       |
| <b>swiðe</b> , <i>very, severely</i> | <b>swiðor</b> , <i>more</i>   | <b>swiðost</b> , <i>most, chiefly</i> |
| <b>æf</b> , <i>before</i>            | <b>æfor</b> , <i>formerly</i> | <b>ærest</b> , <i>first</i>           |
| <b>norð</b> , <i>northwards</i>      | <b>norðor</b>                 | <b>norðmest</b> <sup>1</sup>          |

(2) The comparatives of a few adverbs may be found by dropping **-ra** of the corresponding adjective form :

| <i>Positive.</i>           | <i>Comparative.</i> | <i>Superlative.</i> |
|----------------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| <b>lōnge</b> , <i>long</i> | <b>lēng</b>         | <b>lēngest</b>      |
| <b>micle</b> , <i>much</i> | <b>mā</b>           | <b>māest</b>        |
| <b>wel</b> , <i>well</i>   | <b>beþ</b>          | <b>beþst</b>        |

#### Expressions of Time.

**98.** (1) Duration of time and extent of space are usually expressed by the accusative case: **Ealle ðā hwīle ðe ðæt līc bið inne**, *All the time that the body is within*; **twēgen dagas**, *for two days*; **ealne weg**, *all the way, always.*

---

<sup>1</sup> This is really a double superlative, **m** being itself an old superlative suffix Cf. Latin *opti-m-us* In Mn.E. *northmost* and *hindmost*, *-m-est* has been confused with *-most*, with which etymologically it has nothing to do.



(2) Time when is more often expressed by the instrumental case when no preposition is used : *ðy ilcan dæge, the same day*; *ælcce gēare, each year*; *ðy gēare, that year*; *ælcce dæge, each day*.

(3) Time or space within which is expressed by *on* and the dative: *on sumera, in summer*; *on wintra, in winter*; *on fif dagum, in five days*; *on fif mīlum, in five miles*; *on ðissum gēare, in this year*; *on ðām tīman, in those times*. Sometimes by the genitive without a preceding preposition: *ðæs gēares, in that year*.

99.

VOCABULARY.

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <i>ðæt gefylce</i> [ <i>folc</i> ], <i>troop, division.</i>                    | <i>sé siges, victory.</i>                             |
| <i>ðæt lond</i> ( <i>land</i> ), <i>land</i>                                   | <i>siges<sup>1</sup> habban, to win (the) victory</i> |
| <i>sēo mīl, mile.</i>  |   |
| <i>ððer . . . oððer, the one . . . the other, the former . . . the latter.</i> | <i>sprecan, to speak.</i>                             |
|  | <i>ðæt swīn</i> ( <i>swyñ</i> ), <i>swine, hog.</i>   |
|  | <i>wēste, waste.</i>                                  |

100.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Hē hæfð ðrēo swīðe swift hors. 2. Ic hæbbe nigon-tiene scēap ond mā ðonne twēntig swīna. 3. Sēo gōde cwēn cīest twā hund monna 4. Uton feohtan wið ðā Dene mid ðrīm hunde scipa 5. Qnd hīe wæron on twām gefylcum : on oðrum wæs<sup>2</sup> Bāchsecg ond Halfdene ðā hāðnan cyningas, ond on oðrum wæron ðā eorlas. 6. Dū spricst sōðlice. 7. Donne rīt ælc mon his weg. 8. Æfter monigum dagum, hæfde Ælfred cyning<sup>3</sup> siges. 9. ðis lond is wēste styceemælum. 10. ðes feld is fiftiges mīla brād. 11. Æl-

<sup>1</sup> **Sige** usually, but not invariably, precedes **habban**

<sup>2</sup> See p 100, note on **gefeht**.

<sup>3</sup> The proper noun comes first in appositive expressions : **Ælfred cyning, Sidroc eorl, Hēahmund bisceop**.

fred cyning hæfde mōnige frīend, for ðǣm ðe hē wæs ægðer ge wīs ge gōd. 12. Ðā hwalas, ðe ðū ymbe spriest, sind micle læssan oðrum hwalum. 13. Hēo is ieldre ðonne hiere swuster, ac mīn brōðor is ieldra ðonne hēo. 14. Wē cumað tō ðǣm tūne ælce gēare. 15. Ðā mēn ðe ðā swift-ostan hors hǣfdon wǣron mid ðǣm Denum fēower dagas.

II. 1 Our army (**werod**) was in two divisions: one was large, the other was small. 2. The richest men in the kingdom have more (**mā**) than thirty ships. 3. He was much wiser than his brother. 4. He fights against the Northumbrians with two ships. 5. After three years King Alfred gained the victory. 6. Whosoever chooses these gifts, chooses well. 7. This man's son is both wiser and better than his father. 8. When the king rides, then ride his thanes also. 9. The richest men are not always (**ā**) the wisest men.



## CHAPTER XVIII.

### STRONG VERBS: CLASS I. (See § 17.)

#### Syntax of Moods.

**101.** Of the three hundred simple verbs belonging to the O.E. Strong Conjugation, it is estimated<sup>1</sup> that seventy-eight have preserved their strong inflections in Mn.E., that eighty-eight have become weak, and that the remaining one hundred and thirty-four have entirely disappeared, their places being taken in most cases by verbs of Latin origin introduced through the Norman-French.

---

<sup>1</sup> Lounsbury, *English Language*, Part II, § 241.

NOTE.—Only the simple or primitive verbs, not the compound forms, are here taken into consideration. The proportionate loss, therefore, is really much greater. O E abounded in formative prefixes. “Thus from the Anglo-Saxon **flōwan**, to *flow*, ten new compounds were formed by the addition of various prefixes, of which ten, only one, **oferflōwan**, to *overflow*, survives with us. In a similar manner, from the verb **sittan**, to *sit*, thirteen new verbs were formed, of which not a single one is to be found to-day.” Lounsbury, *ib.* Part I, p. 107.

**102. Class I: The “Drive” Conjugation.**

Vowel Succession: *ī, ā, i, i.*

|                |                |                |                                      |
|----------------|----------------|----------------|--------------------------------------|
| INFINITIVE.    | PRETERIT SING. | PRETERIT PLUR. | PAST PART.                           |
| <b>Drif-an</b> | <b>drāf</b>    | <b>drif-on</b> | <b>gedrif-en</b> , to <i>drive</i> . |

**Indicative.**

PRESENT

|              |    |                       |           |
|--------------|----|-----------------------|-----------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | 1. | Ic drif-e             |           |
|              | 2. | ðū drif-st (drif-est) |           |
|              | 3. | hē drif-ð (drif-eð)   |           |
| <i>Plur.</i> | 1. | wē                    | } drif-að |
|              | 2. | gē                    |           |
|              | 3. | hīe                   |           |

**Subjunctive.**

PRESENT.

|              |    |     |           |
|--------------|----|-----|-----------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | 1. | Ic  | } drif-e  |
|              | 2. | ðū  |           |
|              | 3. | hē  |           |
| <i>Plur.</i> | 1. | wē  | } drif-en |
|              | 2. | gē  |           |
|              | 3. | hīe |           |

PRETERIT

|              |    |           |           |
|--------------|----|-----------|-----------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | 1. | Ic drāf   |           |
|              | 2. | ðū drif-e |           |
|              | 3. | hē drāf   |           |
| <i>Plur.</i> | 1. | wē        | } drif-on |
|              | 2. | gē        |           |
|              | 3. | hīe       |           |

PRETERIT.

|              |    |     |           |
|--------------|----|-----|-----------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | 1. | Ic  | } drif-e  |
|              | 2. | ðū  |           |
|              | 3. | hē  |           |
| <i>Plur.</i> | 1. | wē  | } drif-en |
|              | 2. | gē  |           |
|              | 3. | hīe |           |

**Imperative.**

|              |    |         |
|--------------|----|---------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | 2. | drif    |
| <i>Plur.</i> | 1. | drif-an |
|              | 2. | drif-að |

**Infinitive.**

drif-an

**Present Participle.**

drif-ende

**Gerund.**

tō drif-anne (-enne)

**Past Participle.**

gedrif-en

**Tense Formation of Strong Verbs.**

**103.** (1) It will be seen from the conjugation of *drifan* that the *present stem* in all strong verbs is used throughout the present indicative, the present subjunctive, the imperative, the infinitive, the gerund, and the present participle. More than half of the endings, therefore, of the Strong Conjugation are added directly to the present stem.

(2) That the preterit singular stem is used in only two forms of the verb, the 1st and 3d persons singular of the preterit indicative:  **Ic drāf, hē drāf.**

(3) That the preterit plural stem is used in the preterit plural indicative, in the 2d person of the preterit singular indicative, and in the singular and plural of the preterit subjunctive.

(4) That the stem of the past participle (*gedrif-*) is used for no other form.

**Syntax of the Verb.**

**104.** The Indicative Mood<sup>1</sup> represents the predicate *as a reality*. It is used both in independent and in dependent clauses, its function in O.E. corresponding with its function in Mn.E.

**105.** The Subjunctive Mood represents the predicate *as an idea*.<sup>2</sup> It is of far more frequent occurrence in O.E. than in Mn.E.

---

<sup>1</sup> Usage sanctions *mood*, but the better spelling would be *mode*. It is from the Lat *modus*, whereas *mood* (= *temper*) is O.E. *mōd*.

<sup>2</sup> Gildersleeve's *Latin Grammar*, § 255.

1. When used in independent clauses it denotes desire, command, or entreaty, and usually precedes its subject: **Sīe ðīn nama gehālgod**, *Hallowed be Thy name*; **Ne swerigen gē**, *Do not swear*.

2. In dependent clauses it denotes uncertainty, possibility, or mere futurity.<sup>1</sup> Concessive clauses (introduced by **ðēah**, *though*) and temporal clauses (introduced by ~~**ær**~~, **ær ðām ðe**, *before*) are rarely found with any other mood than the subjunctive. The subjunctive is also regularly used in Alfredian prose after verbs of saying, even when no suggestion of doubt or discredit attaches to the narration.<sup>2</sup> “Whether the statement refer to a fact or not, whether the subject-matter be vouched for by the reporter, as regards its objective reality and truth, the subjunctive does not tell. It simply represents a statement as reported”<sup>3</sup>: **ðēah man āsētte twēgen fætels full ealað oððe wāteres**, *though one set two vessels full of ale or water*; **ær ðām ðe hit eall forhęgod wære**, *before it was all ravaged*; **Hē sāde ðæt Norðmanna land wære swyðe lang and swyðe smæl**, *He said that the Norwegians’ land was very long and very narrow*.

---

<sup>1</sup> Thus when Alfred writes that an event took place *before* the founding of Rome, he uses the subjunctive: **ær ðām ðe Rōmeburh getimbrod wære** = *before Rome were founded*, but, **æfter ðām ðe Rōmeburh getimbrod wæs** = *after Rome was founded*.

<sup>2</sup> “By the time of Ælfric, however, the levelling influence of the indicative [after verbs of saying] has made considerable progress.” — Gorrell, *Indirect Discourse in Anglo-Saxon* (Dissertation, 1895), p 101

<sup>3</sup> Hotz, *On the Use of the Subjunctive Mood in Anglo-Saxon* (Zürich, 1882).

**106.** The Imperative is the mood of command or intercession : **Iōhannes, cum tō mē, John, come to me; And forgyf ūs ūre gyltas, And forgive us our trespasses; Ne drif ūs fram ðē, Do not drive us from thee.**

**107.** (1) The Infinitive and Participles are used chiefly in verb-phrases (§§ 138–141); but apart from this function, the Infinitive, being a neuter noun, may serve as the subject or direct object of a verb. **Hātan (to command, bid), lāetan (to let, permit), and onginnan (to begin)** are regularly followed by the Infinitive: **Hine rīdan lyste, To ride pleased him; Hēt ðā bære seſttan, He bade set down the bier;<sup>1</sup> Lāetað ðā lýtlingas tō mē cuman, Let the little ones come to me; ðā ongann hē sprecan, then began he to speak.**

(2) The Participles may be used independently in the dative absolute construction (an imitation of the Latin ablative absolute), usually for the expression of time:<sup>2</sup> **Him ðā gýt sprecendum, While he was yet speaking; gefylledum dagum, the days having been fulfilled.**

**108.** The Gerund, or Gerundial Infinitive, is used:

(1) To express purpose: **Ūt ēode sē sāwere his sād tō sāwenne, Out went the sower his seed to sow.**

(2) To expand or determine the meaning of a noun or adjective: **Sýmōn, ic hæbbe ðē tō secgenne sum ðing, Simon, I have something to say to thee; Hit is scōndlic ymb swelc tō sprecanne, It is shameful to speak about such things.**

---

<sup>1</sup> Not, *He commanded the bier to be set down.* The Mn.E passive in such sentences is a loss both in force and directness.

<sup>2</sup> Callaway, *The Absolute Participle in Anglo-Saxon* (Dissertation, 1889), p 19

(3) After **bēon** (**wesan**) to denote duty or necessity: **Hwæt is nū mā ymbe ðis tō sprecanne**, *What more is there now to say about this?* **ðonne is tō geðencenne hwæt Crīst self cwæð**, *then it behooves to bethink what Christ himself said.*

NOTE. — The Gerund is simply the dative case of the Infinitive after **tō**. It began very early to supplant the simple Infinitive; hence the use of *to* with the Infinitive in Mn.E. As late as the Elizabethan age the Gerund sometimes replaced the Infinitive even after the auxiliary verbs:

“Some pagan shore,  
Where these two Christian armies *might combine*  
The blood of malice in a vein of league,  
And not *to spend* it so unneighbourly.”

— *King John*, V, 2, 39.

When *to* lost the meaning of purpose and came to be considered as a merely formal prefix, *for* was used to supplement the purpose element: *What went ye out for to see?*<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> This is not the place to discuss the Gerund in Mn.E, the so-called “infinitive in *-ing*.” The whole subject has been befogged for the lack of an accepted nomenclature, one that shall do violence neither to grammar nor to history.

## CHAPTER XIX.

## STRONG VERBS: CLASSES II AND III.

## 109. Class II: The "Choose" Conjugation.

Vowel Succession: ēo, ēa, u, o

| INFINITIVE. <sup>1</sup>  | PRET. SING         | PRET. PLUR <sup>2</sup> | PAST PART <sup>2</sup>       |
|---------------------------|--------------------|-------------------------|------------------------------|
| cēos-an,                  | cēas,              | cur-on,                 | gecor-en, <i>to choose</i> , |
|                           | <b>Indicative.</b> |                         | <b>Subjunctive.</b>          |
|                           | PRESENT.           |                         | PRESENT.                     |
| <i>Sing.</i> 1. Ic cēos-e |                    | <i>Sing.</i> 1. Ic      | } cēos-e                     |
| 2. šū cīest (cēos-est)    |                    | 2. šū                   |                              |
| 3. hē cīest (cēos-eš)     |                    | 3. hē                   |                              |
| <i>Plur.</i> 1. wē        | } cēos-aš          | <i>Plur.</i> 1. wē      | } cēos-en                    |
| 2. gē                     |                    | 2. gē                   |                              |
| 3. hīe                    |                    | 3. hīe                  |                              |
|                           | PRETERIT.          |                         | PRETERIT.                    |
| <i>Sing.</i> 1. Ic cēas   |                    | <i>Sing.</i> 1. Ic      | } cur-e                      |
| 2. šū cur-e               |                    | 2. šū                   |                              |
| 3. hē cēas                |                    | 3. hē                   |                              |
| <i>Plur.</i> 1. wē        | } cur-on           | <i>Plur.</i> 1. wē      | } cur-en                     |
| 2. gē                     |                    | 2. gē                   |                              |
| 3. hīe                    |                    | 3. hīe                  |                              |
|                           | <b>Imperative.</b> | <b>Infinitive.</b>      | <b>Present Participle.</b>   |
| <i>Sing.</i> 2. cēos      |                    | cēos-an                 | cēos-ende                    |
| <i>Plur.</i> 1. cēos-an   |                    |                         |                              |
| 2. cēos-aš                |                    | <b>Gerund.</b>          | <b>Past Participle.</b>      |
|                           |                    | tō cēos-anne (-enne)    | gecor-en                     |

<sup>1</sup> A few verbs of Class II have ū instead of ēo in the infinitive:brūcan, brēac, brucon, gebrocen, *to enjoy* [brook].  
būgan, bēag, bugon, gebogen, *to bend, bow*.<sup>2</sup> By a law known as Grammatical Change, final š, s, and h of strong verbs generally become d, r, and g, respectively, in the preterit plural and past participle.



**110.** Class III: The "Bind" Conjugation.

Vowel Succession:  $\left. \begin{matrix} i \\ e \end{matrix} \right\}, a, u, \left. \begin{matrix} u \\ o \end{matrix} \right\}$ .

The present stem ends in **m**, **n**, **l**, **r**, or **h**, + one or more consonants:

|            |            |   |            |            |            |
|------------|------------|---|------------|------------|------------|
| <b>m</b> : | belimp-an, | $\left\{ \begin{matrix} \text{belomp} \\ \text{belamp} \end{matrix} \right\}$ , | belump-on, | belump-en, | to belong  |
| <b>n</b> : | bind-an,   | $\left\{ \begin{matrix} \text{bqnd} \\ \text{band} \end{matrix} \right\}$ ,     | bund-on,   | gebund-en, | to bind.   |
| <b>l</b> : | help-an,   | healp,  | hulp-on,   | geholp-en, | to help.   |
| <b>r</b> : | weorð-an,  | wearð,  | wurd-on,   | geword-en, | to become. |
| <b>h</b> : | gefeht-an, | gefeht,   | gefuht-on, | gefoht-en, | to fight   |

NOTE 1. — If the present stem ends in a nasal (**m**, **n**) + a consonant, the past participle retains the **u** of the pret plur; but if the present stem ends in a liquid (**l**, **r**) or **h**, + a consonant, the past participle has **o** instead of **u**.

NOTE 2. — Why do we not find \***halp**, \***warð**, and \***faht** in the pret. sing? Because **a** before **l**, **r**, or **h**, + a consonant, underwent "breaking" to **ea**. Breaking also changes every **e** followed by **r** or **h**, + a consonant, to **eo**: **weorðan** (< \***werðan**), **feohtan** (< \***fehtan**).

**111.** Indicative.

## PRESENT.

|              |    |                      |
|--------------|----|----------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | 1. | Ic bind-e            |
|              | 2. | ðū bintst (bind-est) |
|              | 3. | hē bint (bind-eð)    |

|              |    |     |           |
|--------------|----|-----|-----------|
| <i>Plur.</i> | 1. | wē  | } bind-að |
|              | 2. | gē  |           |
|              | 3. | hīe |           |

## PRETERIT

|              |    |           |
|--------------|----|-----------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | 1. | Ic bqnd   |
|              | 2. | ðū bund-e |
|              | 3. | hē bqnd   |

## Subjunctive

## PRESENT.

|              |    |    |          |
|--------------|----|----|----------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | 1. | Ic | } bind-e |
|              | 2. | ðū |          |
|              | 3. | hē |          |

|              |    |     |           |
|--------------|----|-----|-----------|
| <i>Plur.</i> | 1. | wē  | } bind-en |
|              | 2. | gē  |           |
|              | 3. | hīe |           |

## PRETERIT.

|              |    |    |          |
|--------------|----|----|----------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | 1. | Ic | } bund-e |
|              | 2. | ðū |          |
|              | 3. | hē |          |

|                    |         |           |                      |                         |           |                            |  |
|--------------------|---------|-----------|----------------------|-------------------------|-----------|----------------------------|--|
| PRETERIT.          |         |           |                      | PRETERIT                |           |                            |  |
| Plur. 1            | wē      | } bund-on |                      | Plur. 1                 | wē        | } bund-en                  |  |
| 2.                 | gē      |           |                      | 2.                      | gē        |                            |  |
| 3                  | hīe     |           |                      | 3.                      | hīe       |                            |  |
| <b>Imperative.</b> |         |           |                      | <b>Infinitive</b>       |           | <b>Present Participle.</b> |  |
| Sing. 2            | bind    |           | bind-an              |                         | bind-ende |                            |  |
| Plur. 1.           | bind-an |           |                      |                         |           |                            |  |
| 2.                 | bind-að |           | <b>Gerund.</b>       | <b>Past Participle.</b> |           |                            |  |
|                    |         |           | to bind-anne (-enne) | gebund-en               |           |                            |  |

## 112.

## VOCABULARY.

|                                    |   |   |   |  |                        |   |                                   |                               |                          |                             |                                  |   |                              |                        |                                  |                       |
|------------------------------------|---|---|---|--|------------------------|---|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------------------|---|------------------------------|------------------------|----------------------------------|-----------------------|
| ðæt gefeoht, <i>fight, battle.</i> | sēo geræcednes, <i>narration</i> [reç-can]. | ðæt gesceap, <i>creation</i> [sciepan]. | sēo hergung (§ 39, (3)), <i>harrying, plundering</i> [hergian]. | sē medu (medo) (§ 51), <i>mead</i>         | sēo meolc, <i>milk</i> | sē middangeard, <i>world</i> [middle-yard]. | sē munuc, <i>monk</i> [monachus]. | sēo mýre, <i>mare</i> [mearh] | hē sǣde, <i>he said.</i> | hīe sǣdon, <i>they said</i> | sēo spēd, <i>riches</i> [speed]. | spēdig, <i>rich, prosperous</i> [speedy]. | sēo tid, <i>time</i> [tide]. | unspēdig, <i>poor.</i> | sē westanwind, <i>west-wind.</i> | ðæt wīn, <i>wine.</i> |
| ārīsan,                            | ārās,                                       | ārison,                                 | ārīsen,   | <i>to arise.</i>                           |                        |   |                                   |                               |                          |                             |                                  |   |                              |                        |                                  |                       |
| bīdan,                             | bād,  | bidon,                                  | gebiden,  | <i>to remain, expect</i><br>(with gen.)    |                        |   |                                   |                               |                          |                             |                                  |   |                              |                        |                                  |                       |
| drēogan, <sup>1</sup>              | drēag,                                      | drugon,                                 | gedrogen,   | <i>to endure, suffer.</i>                  |                        |   |                                   |                               |                          |                             |                                  |   |                              |                        |                                  |                       |
| drincan,                           | dronc,                                      | druncon,                                | gedruncen,  | <i>to drink.</i>                           |                        |   |                                   |                               |                          |                             |                                  |   |                              |                        |                                  |                       |
| findan,                            | fōnd,                                       | fundon,                                 | gefunden,   | <i>to find</i>                             |                        |   |                                   |                               |                          |                             |                                  |   |                              |                        |                                  |                       |
| geswīcan                           | geswāc,                                     | geswicon,                               | geswicen,   | <i>to cease, cease from</i><br>(with gen.) |                        |   |                                   |                               |                          |                             |                                  |   |                              |                        |                                  |                       |
| iernan (yrnan),                    | qrn,  | urnon,                                  | geurnen,  | <i>to run.</i>                             |                        |   |                                   |                               |                          |                             |                                  |   |                              |                        |                                  |                       |
| onginnan,                          | ongqnn,                                     | ongunnon,                               | ongunnen,   | <i>to begin.</i>                           |                        |   |                                   |                               |                          |                             |                                  |   |                              |                        |                                  |                       |
| rīdan,                             | rād,  | ridon,                                  | geriden,  | <i>to ride.</i>                            |                        |   |                                   |                               |                          |                             |                                  |   |                              |                        |                                  |                       |
| singan,                            | sqng,                                       | sungon,                                 | gesungen,   | <i>to sing</i>                             |                        |   |                                   |                               |                          |                             |                                  |   |                              |                        |                                  |                       |
| wrītan,                            | wrāt,                                       | writon,                                 | gewriten,   | <i>to write</i>                            |                        |   |                                   |                               |                          |                             |                                  |   |                              |                        |                                  |                       |

<sup>1</sup> Cf. the Scotch "to dree one's weird" = *to endure one's fate.*

## 113.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Æfter ðissum wordum, sē munuc wrāt ealle ðā gerecednesse on ānre bēc. 2. Ðā eorlas ridon ūp ær ðām ðe ðā Dēne ðæs gefeohtes geswicen. 3. Cædmon song ærest be middangeardes gesceape. 4. Sē cyning qnd ðā rīcostan mēn drincað mȳran meolc, qnd ðā unspēdigan drincað medu. 5. Qnd hē ārās qnd sē wind geswāc. 6. Hīe sēdon ðæt hīe ðær westwindes biden. 7. Hwæt is nū mā ymbe ðās ðing tō sprecanne? 8. Ðā secgas ongunnon geswīcan ðære hęrgunga. 9. Ðā bēag ðæt lōnd ðær ēastryhte, oððe sēo sē in on ðæt lōnd. 10. Ðās lōnd belimpað tō ðām Eŋglum. 11. Ðēah ðā Dēne ealne dæg gefuhten, gīet hæfde Ælfred cyning sige. 12. Qnd ðæs (afterwards) ymbe ānne mōnað gefeaht Ælfred cyning wið ealne ðone hęre æt Wiltūne.

II. 1. The most prosperous men drank mare's milk and wine, but the poor men drank mead. 2. I suffered many things before you began to help me (dat). 3. About two days afterwards (**Ðæs ymbe twēgen dagas**), the plundering ceased. 4. The king said that he fought against all the army (**hęre**). 5. Although the Danes remained one month (§ 98, (1)), they did not begin to fight. 6. These gifts belonged to my brother. 7. The earls were glad because their lord was (indicative) with them. 8. What did you find? 9. Then wrote he about (**be**) the wise man's deeds. 10. What more is there to endure?

## CHAPTER XX.

STRONG VERBS: CLASSES IV, V, VI, AND VII.  
CONTRACT VERBS.

[The student can now complete the conjugation for himself (§ 103).  
Only the principal parts will be given ]

**114.** Class IV: The "Bear" Conjugation.

Vowel Succession: e, æ,  $\bar{æ}$ , o.

The present stem ends in l, r, or m, no consonant following:

|    |              |                   |                       |
|----|--------------|-------------------|-----------------------|
| l: | hel-an, hæl, | h $\bar{æ}$ l-on, | gehol-en, to conceal. |
| r: | ber-an, bær, | b $\bar{æ}$ r-on, | gebor-en, to bear.    |

The two following verbs are slightly irregular:

|    |   |
|----|---|
| m: | { nim-an, nōm (nam), nōm-on (nām-on), genum-en, to take |
|    | { cum-an, c(w)ōm, c(w)ōm-on, gecum-en, to come.         |

**115.** Class V: The "Give" Conjugation.

Succession of Vowels: e (ie), æ,  $\bar{æ}$ , e.

The present stem ends in a single consonant, never a liquid or nasal:

|                |                      |                            |
|----------------|----------------------|----------------------------|
| met-an, mæt,   | m $\bar{æ}$ ton,     | gemet-en, to measure, mete |
| gief-an, geaf, | g $\bar{e}$ afof-on, | gegief-en, to give         |

NOTE 1. — The palatal consonants, g, c, and sc, convert a following e into ie, æ into ea, and  $\bar{æ}$  into  $\bar{e}a$ . Hence giefan (<\*gefan), geaf (<\*gæf), g $\bar{e}$ afof (<\*g $\bar{æ}$ fof), gegiefen (<\*gegefen). This change is known as Palatalization. See § 8.

NOTE 2. — The infinitives of the following important verbs are only apparently exceptional:

|              |                   |                            |
|--------------|-------------------|----------------------------|
| biddan, bæd, | b $\bar{æ}$ d-on, | gebed-en, to ask for [bid] |
| licgan, læg, | l $\bar{æ}$ g-on, | geleg-en, to lie, extend.  |
| sittan, sæt, | s $\bar{æ}$ t-on, | geset-en, to sit.          |

The original **e** reappears in the participial stems. It was changed to **i** in the present stems on account of a former **-jan** in the infinitive (**bid-jan**, etc.) See § 61. To the same cause is due the doubling of consonants in the infinitive. All simple consonants in O.E., with the exception of **r**, were doubled after a short vowel, when an original **j** followed.

### 116. Class VI: The "Shake" Conjugation.

Succession of Vowels: **a, ɔ, ɔ, a.**

|                 |              |                 |                   |                      |
|-----------------|--------------|-----------------|-------------------|----------------------|
| <b>scac-an,</b> | <b>scōc;</b> | <b>scōc-on,</b> | <b>gescac-en,</b> | <i>to shake</i>      |
| <b>far-an,</b>  | <b>fōr,</b>  | <b>fōr-on,</b>  | <b>gefar-en,</b>  | <i>to go [fare].</i> |

### 117. Class VII: The "Fall" Conjugation.

Vowel Succession:  $\left. \begin{array}{c} \bar{a} \\ \bar{æ} \end{array} \right\}, \bar{e}, \bar{e}, \left. \begin{array}{c} \bar{a} \\ \bar{æ} \end{array} \right\};$  or  $\left. \begin{array}{c} ea \\ \bar{ea} \\ \bar{o} \end{array} \right\}, \bar{eo}, \bar{eo}, \left. \begin{array}{c} ea \\ \bar{ea} \\ \bar{o} \end{array} \right\}.$

- |     |                  |               |                  |                    |   |
|-----|------------------|---------------|------------------|--------------------|---|
| (1) | <b>hāt-an,</b>   | <b>hēt,</b>   | <b>hēt-on,</b>   | <b>gehāt-en,</b>   | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{to call, name,} \\ \textit{command.} \end{array} \right.$ |
|     | <b>lāet-an,</b>  | <b>lēt,</b>   | <b>lēt-on,</b>   | <b>gelāet-en,</b>  |   |
| (2) | <b>feall-an,</b> | <b>fēoll,</b> | <b>fēoll-on,</b> | <b>gefeall-en,</b> | <i>to fall.</i>   |
|     | <b>heald-an,</b> | <b>hēold,</b> | <b>hēold-on,</b> | <b>geheald-en,</b> | <i>to hold.</i>   |
|     | <b>hēaw-an,</b>  | <b>hēow,</b>  | <b>hēow-on,</b>  | <b>gehēaw-en,</b>  | <i>to hew.</i>  |
|     | <b>grōw-an,</b>  | <b>grēow,</b> | <b>grēow-on,</b> | <b>gegrōw-en,</b>  | <i>to grow.</i>   |

NOTE 1. — This class consists of the Reduplicating Verbs; that is, those verbs that originally formed their preterits not by internal vowel change (ablaut), but by prefixing to the present stem the initial consonant + **e** (cf. Gk *λέλοιπα* and Lat. *dē-di*). Contraction then took place between the syllabic prefix and the root, the fusion resulting in  $\bar{e}$  or  $\bar{eo}$ : \***he-hat** > **heht** > **hēt**

NOTE 2. — A peculiar interest attaches to **hātan**: the forms **hätte** and **hätton** are the sole remains in O.E. of the original Germanic passive. They are used both as presents and as preterits: **hätte** = *I am* or *was called, he is* or *was called*. No other verb in O.E. could have a passive sense without calling in the aid of the verb *to be* (§ 141).

## Contract Verbs.

**118.** The few Contract Verbs found in O.E. do not constitute a new class; they fall under Classes I, II, V, VI, and VII, already treated. The present stem ended originally in *h*. This was lost before *-an* of the infinitive, contraction and compensatory lengthening being the result. The following are the most important of these verbs:

Classes

- |      |                           |               |                  |  |                                       |
|------|---------------------------|---------------|------------------|--|---------------------------------------|
| I.   | <i>ðēon</i> (< *ðīhan),   | <i>ðāh</i> ,  | <i>ðig-on</i> ,  | { <i>geðig-en</i><br><i>geðung-en</i> }, | <i>to thrive.</i>                     |
| II.  | <i>tēon</i> (< *tēohan),  | <i>tēah</i> , | <i>tug-on</i> ,  | <i>getog-en</i> ,                        | <i>to draw, go</i><br>[ <i>tug</i> ]. |
| V.   | <i>sēon</i> (< *sehwan),  | <i>seah</i> , | <i>sāw-on</i> ,  | <i>gesew-en</i> ,                        | <i>to see.</i>                        |
| VI.  | <i>slēan</i> (< *slahan), | <i>slōh</i> , | <i>slōg-on</i> , | <i>geslæg-en</i> ,                       | <i>to slay.</i>                       |
| VII. | <i>fōn</i> (< *fōhan),    | <i>fēng</i> , | <i>fēng-on</i> , | <i>gefong-en</i> ,                       | <i>to seize</i><br>[ <i>fang</i> ].   |

**119.** The Present Indicative of these verbs runs as follows (see rules of *i*-umlaut, § 58):

|              |    |            |               |               |               |                |              |
|--------------|----|------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|----------------|--------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | 1  | <i>Ic</i>  | <i>ðeo</i>    | <i>tēo</i>    | <i>sēo</i>    | <i>slēa</i>    | <i>fō</i>    |
|              | 2. | <i>ðū</i>  | <i>ðihst</i>  | <i>tīhst</i>  | <i>siehst</i> | <i>sliehst</i> | <i>fēhst</i> |
|              | 3. | <i>hē</i>  | <i>ðihð</i>   | <i>tīhð</i>   | <i>siehð</i>  | <i>sliehð</i>  | <i>fēhð</i>  |
| <i>Plur.</i> | 1  | <i>wē</i>  | } <i>ðeoð</i> | } <i>tēoð</i> | } <i>sēoð</i> | } <i>slēað</i> | } <i>fōð</i> |
|              | 2. | <i>gē</i>  |               |               |               |                |              |
|              | 3. | <i>hie</i> |               |               |               |                |              |

The other tenses and moods are regularly formed from the given stems.

**120.**

## VOCABULARY.

|   |  |  |
|---|--|--|
| <i>sēo</i> <i>æht</i> , <i>property, possession</i><br>[ <i>āgan</i> ]. |  | <i>on gehwæðre hōnd</i> , <i>on both</i><br><i>sides.</i>                        |
| <i>aweg</i> , <i>away</i> [ <i>on weg</i> ].                            |  | <i>sige niman</i> (= <i>sige habban</i> ), <i>to</i><br><i>win (the) victory</i> |
| <i>sēo fierd</i> , <i>English army</i> [ <i>faran</i> ].                |  |  |
| <i>sē hære</i> , <i>Danish army</i> [ <i>hærgian</i> ].                 |  | <i>sēo spræc</i> , <i>speech, language.</i>                                      |

|   |   |  |
|---|---|--|
| tō rice fōn, <i>to come to the throne.</i> <sup>1</sup> | } <i>slaughter,</i><br>} <i>carnage</i> | sē weall, <i>wall, rampart.</i>          |
| ðæt wæl [Val-halla]                                     |   | ðæt wildor, <i>wild beast, reindeer.</i> |
| sē wælsliht,  |   | sē wīngæard, <i>vineyard.</i>            |

ābreccan,<sup>2</sup> ābræc, ābræcon, ābrocen, *to break down.*  
 cweðan, cwæð, cwædon, gecweden, *to say* [quoth].  
 gesēon, geseah, gesāwon, gesewen, *to see.*  
 grōwan, grēow, grēowon, gegrōwen, *to grow.*  
 ofslēan, ofslōh, ofslōgon, ofslægen, *to slay*  
 spreccan, spræc, spræcon, gespreccen, *to speak.*  
 stelan, stæl, stælon, gestolen, *to steal.*  
 stōndan, stōd, stōdon, gestōnden, *to stand.*  
 weaxan, wēox, wēoxon, geweaxen, *to grow, increase* [wax].

## 121.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Æfter ðæm sōðlice (indeed) ealle mæn spræcon āne (one) spræce. 2. Qnd hē cwæð: “Ðis is ān folc, qnd ealle hīe sprecað āne spræce.” 3. On sumum stōwum wīngeardas grōwað. 4. Hē hēt ðā nædran ofslēan. 5. Ðā Ængle ābræcon ðone lōngan weall, qnd sige nōmon. 6. Qnd ðæt sæd grēow qnd wēox. 7. Ic ne geseah ðone mōn sē ðe ðæs cnapan adesan stæl. 8. Hē wæs swyðe spēdig man on ðæm æhtum ðe hiera spēda on<sup>3</sup> bēoð, ðæt is, on wildrum. 9. Qnd ðær wearð (was) micel wælsliht on gehwædre hōnd. 10. Qnd æfter ðissum gefeohte, cōm Ælfred cyning mid his fierde, qnd gefeaht wið ealne ðone hēre, qnd sige nōm. 11. Ðeos burg hātte Æscesdūn (Ashdown). 12. Ðære cwēne lic læg on ðæm hūse. 13. Qnd sē dæl ðe ðær aweg cōm wæs swyðe lýt. 14. Qnd ðæs ðrēotīene dagas Æðered tō rice fēng.

II. 1. The men stood in the ships and fought against the Danes. 2. Before the thanes came, the king rode away.

<sup>1</sup> Literally, *to take to (the) kingdom* Cf. “Have you anything to take to?” (*Two Gentlemen of Verona*, IV, 1, 42)

<sup>2</sup> **Brecan** belongs properly in Class V, but it has been drawn into Class IV possibly through the influence of the **r** in the root.

<sup>3</sup> See § 94, (5).

3 They said (*sædon*) that all the men spoke one language.  
 4. They bore the queen's body to Wilton.    5. Alfred gave many gifts to his army (dat. without *tō*) before he went away.    6. These men are called earls.    7. God sees all things.    8. The boy held the reindeer with (*mid*) his hands.  
 9. About six months afterwards, Alfred gained the victory, and came to the throne.    10. He said that there was very great slaughter on both sides.



## CHAPTER XXI.

### WEAK VERBS (§ 18).

**122.** The verbs belonging to the Weak Conjugation are generally of more recent origin than the strong verbs, being frequently formed from the roots of strong verbs. The Weak Conjugation was the growing conjugation in O.E. as it is in Mn.E. We instinctively put our newly coined or borrowed words into this conjugation (*telegraphed, boycotted*); and children, by the analogy of weak verbs, say *runned* for *ran*, *seed* for *saw*, *teared* for *tore*, *drawed* for *drew*, and *growed* for *grew*. So, for example, when Latin *dictāre* and *breviāre* came into O.E., they came as weak verbs, *dihtian* and *brēfian*.

#### The Three Classes of Weak Verbs.

**123.** There is no difficulty in telling, from the infinitive alone, to which of the three classes a weak verb belongs. Class III has been so invaded by Class II



that but three important verbs remain to it : **habban**, *to have*; **libban**, *to live*; and **sęcgan**, *to say*. Distinction is to be made, therefore, only between Classes II and I. Class II contains the verbs with infinitive in **-ian** not preceded by **r**. Class I contains the remaining weak verbs; that is, those with infinitive in **-r-ian** and those with infinitive in **-an** (not **-ian**).

### Class I.

**124.** The preterit singular and past participle of Class I end in **-ede** and **-ed**, or **-de** and **-ed** respectively.

NOTE. — The infinitives of this class ended originally in **-jan** (= **-ian**). This accounts for the prevalence of **i**-umlaut in these verbs, and also for the large number of short-voweled stems ending in a double consonant (§ 115, Note 2). The weak verb is frequently the causative of the corresponding strong verb. In such cases, the root of the weak verb corresponds in form to the preterit singular of the strong verb: Mn E. *drench* (= *to make drink*), *lay* (= *to make lie*), *rear* (= *to make rise*), and *set* (= *to make sit*), are the umlauted forms of **drȳnc** (preterit singular of **drincan**), **lęg** (preterit singular of **licgan**), **ręs** (preterit singular of **ręsan**), and **sęt** (preterit singular of **sittan**).

### Preterit and Past Participle in **-ede** and **-ed**.

**125.** Verbs with infinitive in **-an** preceded by **ri-** or the double consonants **mm**, **nn**, **ss**, **bb**, **cg** (= **gg**), add **-ede** for the preterit, and **-ed** for the past participle, the double consonant being always made single :

|             |                   |                    |                    |                            |
|-------------|-------------------|--------------------|--------------------|----------------------------|
| <b>ri</b> : | <b>nęri-an</b> ,  | <b>nęr-ede</b> ,   | <b>genęr-ed</b> ,  | <i>to save.</i>            |
| <b>mm</b> : | <b>fręmm-an</b> , | <b>fręm-ede</b> ,  | <b>gefřęm-ed</b> , | <i>to perform</i> [frame]. |
| <b>nn</b> : | <b>đęnn-an</b> ,  | <b>đęn-ede</b> ,   | <b>geđęn-ed</b> ,  | <i>to extend.</i>          |
| <b>ss</b> : | <b>cnyss-an</b> , | <b>cnyss-ede</b> , | <b>gecnys-ed</b> , | <i>to beat.</i>            |

**bb:** swēbb-an, swēf-ede, geswēf-ed, *to put to sleep*  
**cg:** wēcg-an, wēg-ede, gewēg-ed, *to agitate.*

NOTE. — **Lęcgan**, *to lay*, is the only one of these verbs that syncope the **e**: lęcgan, lęgde (lēde), geleşgd (gelēd), instead of lęgede, geleşged.

#### Preterit and Past Participle in *-de* and *-ed*.

**126.** All the other verbs belonging to Class I add **-de** for the preterit and **-ed** for the past participle. This division includes, therefore, all stems long by nature :

|          |          |            |                                   |
|----------|----------|------------|-----------------------------------|
| dǣl-an,  | dǣl-de,  | gedǣl-ed,  | <i>to deal out, divide</i> [dǣl]. |
| dēm-an,  | dēm-de,  | gedēm-ed,  | <i>to judge</i> [dōm].            |
| grēt-an, | grēt-te, | gegrēt-ed, | <i>to greet.</i>                  |
| hīer-an, | hīer-de, | gehīer-ed, | <i>to hear</i>                    |
| lǣd-an,  | lǣd-de,  | gelǣd-ed,  | <i>to lead.</i>                   |

NOTE 1. — A preceding voiceless consonant (§ 9, Note) changes **-de** into **-te**: \*grēt-de > grēt-te; \*mēt-de > mēt-te; \*īec-de > īec-te. Syncope and contraction are also frequent in the participles: **gegrēt-ed** > \*gegrēt-d > **gegrēt(t)**; **gelǣd-ed** > **gelǣd(d)**

NOTE 2. — **Būan**, *to dwell, cultivate*, has an admixture of strong forms in the past participle: **būan**, **būde**, **gebūd** (**bȳn**, **gebūn**). The present participle survives in Mn E. *husband* = *house-dweller*.

**127.** It includes, also, all stems long by position except those ending in **mm**, **nn**, **ss**, **bb**, and **cg** (§ 125):

|           |          |             |                         |
|-----------|----------|-------------|-------------------------|
| sęnd-an,  | sęnd-e,  | gesęnd-ed,  | <i>to send.</i>         |
| sętt-an,  | sęt-te,  | gesęt-ed,   | <i>to set</i> [sittan]. |
| sigl-an,  | sigl-de, | gesigl-ed,  | <i>to sail.</i>         |
| spęnd-an, | spęnd-e, | gespęnd-ed, | <i>to spend.</i>        |
| trędd-an, | tręd-de, | getręd-ed,  | <i>to tread</i>         |

NOTE. — The participles frequently undergo syncope and contraction: **gesęnded** > **gesęnd**; **gesęted** > **gesęt(t)**; **gespęnded** > **gespęnd**; **getręded** > **getręd(d)**

## Irregular Verbs of Class I.

**128.** There are about twenty verbs belonging to Class I that are irregular in having no umlaut in the preterit and past participle. The preterit ends in *-de*, the past participle in *-d*; but, through the influence of a preceding voiceless consonant (§ 9, Note), *-ed* is generally unvoiced to *-te*, and *-d* to *-t*. The most important of these verbs are as follows:

|                  |                 |                  |                            |
|------------------|-----------------|------------------|----------------------------|
| <b>bring-an,</b> | <b>brōh-te,</b> | <b>gebrōh-t,</b> | <i>to bring.</i>           |
| <b>byc-gan,</b>  | <b>boh-te,</b>  | <b>geboh-t,</b>  | <i>to buy.</i>             |
| <b>sēc-an,</b>   | <b>sōh-te,</b>  | <b>gesōh-t,</b>  | <i>to seek.</i>            |
| <b>sęll-an,</b>  | <b>seal-de,</b> | <b>geseal-d,</b> | <i>to give, sell.</i>      |
| <b>tǣc-an,</b>   | <b>tǣh-te,</b>  | <b>getǣh-t,</b>  | <i>to teach.</i>           |
| <b>tęll-an,</b>  | <b>teal-de,</b> | <b>geteal-d,</b> | <i>to count [tell].</i>    |
| <b>đęnc-an,</b>  | <b>đōh-te,</b>  | <b>geđōh-t,</b>  | <i>to think.</i>           |
| <b>đync-an,</b>  | <b>đūh-te,</b>  | <b>geđūh-t,</b>  | <i>to seem [methinks].</i> |
| <b>wyrc-an,</b>  | <b>worh-te,</b> | <b>geworh-t,</b> | <i>to work.</i>            |

NOTE. — Such of these verbs as have stems in **c** or **g** are frequently written with an inserted **e**: **bycgean**, **sēcean**, **tǣcean**, etc. This **e** indicates that **c** and **g** have palatal value; that is, are to be followed with a vanishing **y**-sound. In such cases, O.E. **c** usually passes into Mn.E. *ch*: **tǣc(e)an** > *to teach*; **rǣc(e)an** > *to reach*; **strecc(e)an** > *to stretch*. **Sēc(e)an** gives *beseech* as well as *seek*. See § 8.

## Conjugation of Class I.

**129.** Paradigms of **nęrian**, *to save*; **fręmman**, *to perform*; **dǣlan**, *to divide*:

## Indicative.

## PRESENT.

|              |    |           |         |       |
|--------------|----|-----------|---------|-------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | 1. | Ic nęrie  | fręmme  | dǣle  |
|              | 2. | đū nęrest | fręmest | dǣlst |
|              | 3. | hę nęređ  | fręmeđ  | dǣlđ  |
| <i>Plur.</i> | 1. | wę        | fręmmađ | dǣlađ |
|              | 2. | gę        |         |       |
|              | 3. | hię       |         |       |

## PRETERIT.

|              |    |     |         |           |         |
|--------------|----|-----|---------|-----------|---------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | 1. | Ic  | nere    | fr̥mede   | dǣlde   |
|              | 2. | ðū  | nere    | fr̥medest | dǣldest |
|              | 3. | hē  | nere    | fr̥mede   | dǣlde   |
| <i>Plur.</i> | 1. | wē  | n̥redon | fr̥medon  | dǣldon  |
|              | 2. | gē  |         |           |         |
|              | 3. | hīe |         |           |         |

**Subjunctive.**

## PRESENT.

|              |    |     |        |         |       |
|--------------|----|-----|--------|---------|-------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | 1. | Ic  | n̥rie  | fr̥mme  | dǣle  |
|              | 2. | ðū  |        |         |       |
|              | 3. | hē  |        |         |       |
| <i>Plur.</i> | 1. | wē  | n̥rien | fr̥mmen | dǣlen |
|              | 2. | gē  |        |         |       |
|              | 3. | hīe |        |         |       |

## PRETERIT.

|              |    |     |         |          |        |
|--------------|----|-----|---------|----------|--------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | 1. | Ic  | n̥rede  | fr̥mede  | dǣlde  |
|              | 2. | ðū  |         |          |        |
|              | 3. | hē  |         |          |        |
| <i>Plur.</i> | 1. | wē  | n̥reden | fr̥meden | dǣlden |
|              | 2. | gē  |         |          |        |
|              | 3. | hīe |         |          |        |

**Imperative.**

|              |    |        |         |       |
|--------------|----|--------|---------|-------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | 2. | n̥re   | fr̥me   | dǣl   |
| <i>Plur.</i> | 1. | n̥rian | fr̥mman | dǣlan |
|              | 2. | n̥riað | fr̥mmað | dǣlað |

**Infinitive.**

|        |         |       |
|--------|---------|-------|
| n̥rian | fr̥mman | dǣlan |
|--------|---------|-------|

**Gerund.**

|                     |                      |                    |
|---------------------|----------------------|--------------------|
| tō n̥rianne (-enne) | tō fr̥mmanne (-enne) | tō dǣlanne (-enne) |
|---------------------|----------------------|--------------------|

**Present Participle.**

|          |           |         |
|----------|-----------|---------|
| n̥riende | fr̥mmende | dǣlende |
|----------|-----------|---------|

**Past Participle.**

|         |           |         |
|---------|-----------|---------|
| gen̥red | gef̥r̥med | gedǣled |
|---------|-----------|---------|

NOTE. — The endings of the preterit present no difficulties; in the 2d and 3d singular present, however, the student will observe (*a*) that double consonants in the stem are made single: **fr̥mest, fr̥með** (not \*fr̥mest, \*fr̥með); **ð̥nest, ð̥neð**; **s̥ttest (s̥tst), s̥teð** (**s̥tt**); **fylst, fylð**, from **fyllan**, *to fill*; (*b*) that syncope is the rule in stems long by nature: **d̥ælst (< d̥ælest), d̥ælð (< d̥æleð)**; **d̥ēnst (< d̥ēnest), d̥ēmð (< d̥ēmeð)**; **h̥ierst (< h̥ierest), h̥ierð (< h̥iereð)**. Double consonants are also made single in the imperative 2d singular and in the past participle. Stems long by nature take no final **-e** in the imperative: **d̥æl, h̥ier, d̥ēm**.

## Class II.

**130.** The infinitive of verbs belonging to this class ends in **-ian** (not **-r-ian**), the preterit singular in **-ode**, the past participle in **-od**. The preterit plural usually has **-edon**, however, instead of **-odon**:

|                   |                   |                    |                                    |
|-------------------|-------------------|--------------------|------------------------------------|
| <b>eard-ian</b>   | <b>eard-ode,</b>  | <b>geard-od,</b>   | <i>to dwell</i> [ <b>eorðe</b> ].  |
| <b>luf-ian,</b>   | <b>luf-ode,</b>   | <b>geluf-od,</b>   | <i>to love</i> [ <b>lufu</b> ].    |
| <b>rīcs-ian,</b>  | <b>rīcs-ode,</b>  | <b>gerīcs-od,</b>  | <i>to rule</i> [ <b>rīce</b> ].    |
| <b>sealf-ian,</b> | <b>sealf-ode,</b> | <b>gesealf-od,</b> | <i>to anoint</i> [ <b>salve</b> ]. |
| <b>segl-ian,</b>  | <b>segl-ode,</b>  | <b>gesegl-od,</b>  | <i>to sail</i> [ <b>segel</b> ].   |

NOTE. — These verbs have no trace of original umlaut, since their **-ian** was once **-ōjan**. Hence, the vowel of the stem was shielded from the influence of the **j (= i)** by the interposition of **ō**.

## Conjugation of Class II.

**131.** Paradigm of **lufian**, *to love*:

| Indicative.  |                 | Subjunctive. |                 |
|--------------|-----------------|--------------|-----------------|
| PRESENT.     |                 | PRESENT.     |                 |
| <i>Sing.</i> | 1. Ic lufie     | <i>Sing.</i> | 1. Ic } lufie   |
|              | 2. ðū lufast    |              | 2. ðū } lufie   |
|              | 3. hē lufað     |              | 3. hē } lufie   |
| <i>Plur.</i> | 1. wē } lufiað  | <i>Plur.</i> | 1. wē } lufien  |
|              | 2. gē } lufiað  |              | 2. gē } lufien  |
|              | 3. hīe } lufiað |              | 3. hīe } lufien |

|                 |                  |                 |                  |
|-----------------|------------------|-----------------|------------------|
|                 | <b>PRETERIT.</b> |                 | <b>PRETERIT.</b> |
| <i>Sing</i> 1.  | Ic lufode        | <i>Sing.</i> 1. | Ic               |
| 2.              | þū lufodest      | 2.              | þū               |
| 3.              | hē lufode        | 3               | hē               |
| <i>Plur.</i> 1. | wē               | <i>Plur.</i> 1. | wē               |
| 2.              | gē               | 2.              | gē               |
| 3.              | hīe              | 3.              | hīe              |

|                 |                    |                     |                            |
|-----------------|--------------------|---------------------|----------------------------|
|                 | <b>Imperative.</b> | <b>Infinitive.</b>  | <b>Present Participle.</b> |
| <i>Sing.</i> 2. | lufa               | lufian              | lufiende                   |
| <i>Plur.</i> 1. | lufian             |                     |                            |
| 2.              | lufiað             | <b>Gerund</b>       | <b>Past Participle.</b>    |
|                 |                    | tō lufianne (-enne) | gelufod                    |

NOTE. 1. — The **-ie** (**-ien**) occurring in the present must be pronounced as a dissyllable. The **y**-sound thus interposed between the **i** and **e** is frequently indicated by the letter **g**: **lufie**, or **lufige**; **lufien**, or **lufigen**. So also for **ia**: **lufiað**, or **lufigað**; **lufian**, or **lufig(e)an**.

NOTE 2. — In the preterit singular, **-ade**, **-ude**, and **-ede** are not infrequent for **-ode**.

### Class III.

**132.** The few verbs belonging here show a blending of Classes I and II. Like certain verbs of Class I (§ 128), the preterit and past participle are formed by adding **-de** and **-a**; like Class II, the 2d and 3d present indicative singular end in **-ast** and **-að**, the imperative 2d singular in **-a**:

|                 |                         |                         |                 |
|-----------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|-----------------|
| <b>habb-an,</b> | <b>hæf-de</b>           | <b>gehæf-d,</b>         | <i>to have.</i> |
| <b>libb-an,</b> | <b>lif-de</b>           | <b>gelif-d,</b>         | <i>to live.</i> |
| <b>sęcg-an</b>  | <b>sęð-de (sęg-de),</b> | <b>gesęð (gesęg-d),</b> | <i>to say.</i>  |

## Conjugation of Class III.

**133.** Paradigms of **habban**, to have; **libban**, to live; **sęcgan**, to say.

## Indicative.

## PRESENT.

|                 |                   |        |                |
|-----------------|-------------------|--------|----------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> 1. | Ic hæbbe          | libbe  | sęge           |
| 2.              | þū hæfst (hafast) | lifast | sęgst (sagast) |
| 3.              | hē hæfð (hafað)   | lifað  | sęgð (sagað)   |
| <i>Plur.</i> 1. | wē                | libbað | sęgað          |
| 2.              | gē                |        |                |
| 3.              | hīe               |        |                |

## PRETERIT.

|                 |            |         |        |
|-----------------|------------|---------|--------|
| <i>Sing.</i> 1. | Ic hæfde   | lifde   | sǣde   |
| 2.              | þū hæfdest | lifdest | sǣdest |
| 3.              | hē hæfde   | lifde   | sǣde   |
| <i>Plur.</i> 1. | wē         | lifdon  | sǣdon  |
| 2.              | gē         |         |        |
| 3.              | hīe        |         |        |

## Subjunctive.

## PRESENT.

|                 |     |        |        |       |
|-----------------|-----|--------|--------|-------|
| <i>Sing.</i> 1. | Ic  | hæbbe  | libbe  | sęge  |
| 2.              | þū  |        |        |       |
| 3.              | hē  |        |        |       |
| <i>Plur.</i> 1. | wē  | hæbben | libben | sęgen |
| 2.              | gē  |        |        |       |
| 3.              | hīe |        |        |       |

## PRETERIT.

|                 |     |        |        |       |
|-----------------|-----|--------|--------|-------|
| <i>Sing.</i> 1. | Ic  | hæfde  | lifde  | sǣde  |
| 2.              | þū  |        |        |       |
| 3.              | hē  |        |        |       |
| <i>Plur.</i> 1. | wē  | hæfden | lifden | sǣden |
| 2.              | gē  |        |        |       |
| 3.              | hīe |        |        |       |

## Imperative.

|                 |        |        |       |
|-----------------|--------|--------|-------|
| <i>Sing.</i> 2. | hafa   | lifa   | saga  |
| <i>Plur.</i> 1. | habban | libban | sęgan |
| 2.              | habbað | libbað | sęgað |

|                            |                    |                     |
|----------------------------|--------------------|---------------------|
| <b>Infinitive.</b>         |                    |                     |
| habban                     | libban             | sęęgan              |
| <b>Gerund.</b>             |                    |                     |
| tō habbane (-enne)         | tō libbane (-enne) | tō sęęganne (-enne) |
| <b>Present Participle.</b> |                    |                     |
| hæbbende                   | libbende           | sęęgende            |
| <b>Past Participle.</b>    |                    |                     |
| gehæfd                     | gelifd             | gesęd               |



## CHAPTER XXII.

### REMAINING VERBS ; VERB-PHRASES WITH **habban**, **bēon**, AND **weorðan**.

#### Anomalous Verbs. (See § 19.)

**134.** These are:

|                               |                |                 |                |                        |
|-------------------------------|----------------|-----------------|----------------|------------------------|
| <b>bēon</b> ( <b>wesan</b> ), | <b>wæs</b> ,   | <b>wæron</b> ,  | <b>—</b> ,     | <i>to be</i>           |
| <b>willan</b> ,               | <b>wolde</b> , | <b>woldon</b> , | <b>—</b> ,     | <i>to will, intend</i> |
| <b>dōn</b> ,                  | <b>dyde</b> ,  | <b>dydon</b> ,  | <b>gedōn</b> , | <i>to do, cause</i>    |
| <b>gān</b> ,                  | <b>ēode</b> ,  | <b>ēodon</b> ,  | <b>gegān</b> , | <i>to go.</i>          |

NOTE. — In the original Indo-Germanic language, the first person of the present indicative singular ended in (1) **ō** or (2) **mi** Cf. Gk. *λύ-ω, εἰ-μι*, Lat *am-ō, su-m* The Strong and Weak Conjugations of O E. are survivals of the **ō**-class. The four Anomalous Verbs mentioned above are the sole remains in O.E. of the **mi**-class. Note the surviving **m** in **eom** *I am*, and **dōm** *I do* (Northumbrian form). These **mi**-verbs are sometimes called non-Thematic to distinguish them from the Thematic or **ō**-verbs.



Conjugation of Anomalous Verbs.

**135.** Only the present indicative and subjunctive are at all irregular:

**Indicative.**

PRESENT.

|                 |                |                      |      |       |
|-----------------|----------------|----------------------|------|-------|
| <i>Sing.</i> 1. | Ic eom (bēom)  | wille                | dō   | gā    |
| 2.              | ðū eart (bist) | wilt                 | dēst | gāest |
| 3.              | hē is (bið)    | wille                | dēð  | gāēð  |
| <i>Plur.</i> 1. | wē             | sind(on)      willað | dōð  | gāð   |
| 2.              | gē             |                      |      |       |
| 3.              | hīe            |                      |      |       |

**Subjunctive.**

PRESENT.

|                 |     |      |        |     |     |
|-----------------|-----|------|--------|-----|-----|
| <i>Sing.</i> 1. | Ic  | sīe  | wille  | dō  | gā  |
| 2.              | ðū  |      |        |     |     |
| 3.              | hē  |      |        |     |     |
| <i>Plur.</i> 1. | wē  | sīen | willen | dōn | gān |
| 2.              | gē  |      |        |     |     |
| 3.              | hīe |      |        |     |     |

NOTE.—The preterit subjunctive of **bēon** is formed, of course, not from **wæs**, but from **wæron**. See § 103, (3).

**Preterit-Present Verbs.** (See § 19.)

**136.** These verbs are called Preterit-Present because the present tense (indicative and subjunctive) of each of them is, in form, a strong preterit, the old present having been displaced by the new. They all have weak preterits. Most of the Mn.E. Auxiliary Verbs belong to this class.

|         |                      |         |                             |                                  |
|---------|----------------------|---------|-----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| witan,  | { wiste,<br>wisse, } | wiston, | gewiten,                    | to know [to wit, wot].           |
| āgan,   | āhte,                | āhton,  | āgen (adj),                 | to possess [owe].                |
| cunnan, | cūðe,                | cūðon,  | { gecunnen,<br>cūð (adj), } | to know, can [uncouth, cunning]. |

|                |                  |                   |   |                         |
|----------------|------------------|-------------------|---|-------------------------|
| <b>durran,</b> | <b>dorste,</b>   | <b>dorston,</b>   | — | <i>to dare</i>          |
| <b>sculan,</b> | <b>sceolde,</b>  | <b>sceoldon,</b>  | — | <i>shall</i>            |
| <b>magan,</b>  | { <b>meahte,</b> | { <b>meahton,</b> | — | <i>to be able, may.</i> |
|                | { <b>mihte,</b>  | { <b>mihton,</b>  |   |                         |
| <b>mōtan,</b>  | <b>mōste,</b>    | <b>mōston,</b>    | — | <i>may, must.</i>       |

NOTE. — The change in meaning from preterit to present, with retention of the preterit form, is not uncommon in other languages. Several examples are found in Latin and Greek (cf *nōvi* and *oīda*, *I know*). Mn E. has gone further still: **āhte** and **mōste**, which had already suffered the loss of their old preterits (**āh**, **mōt**), have been forced back again into the present (*ought, must*). Having exhausted, therefore, the only means of preterit formation known to Germanic, the strong and the weak, it is not likely that either *ought* or *must* will ever develop distinct preterit forms.

### Conjugation of Preterit-Present Verbs.

**137.** The irregularities occur in the present indicative and subjunctive :

#### Indicative

##### PRESENT.

|                        |         |               |        |        |        |       |       |
|------------------------|---------|---------------|--------|--------|--------|-------|-------|
| <i>Sing.</i> 1. Ic wāt | āh      | cƿn (can)     | dear   | sceal  | mæg    | mōt   |       |
| 2. ƿū wāst             | āhst    | cƿnst (canst) | dearst | scealt | meaht  | mōst  |       |
| 3. hē wāt              | āh      | cƿn (can)     | dear   | sceal  | mæg    | mōt   |       |
| <i>Plur.</i> 1. wē     | } witon | āgon          | cunnon | durren | sculon | magen | mōton |
| 2. gē                  |         |               |        |        |        |       |       |
| 3. hīe                 |         |               |        |        |        |       |       |

#### Subjunctive.

##### PRESENT

|                    |         |      |        |        |                 |       |       |
|--------------------|---------|------|--------|--------|-----------------|-------|-------|
| <i>Sing.</i> 1. Ic | } wite  | āge  | cunne  | durre  | scule (scyle)   | mæge  | mōte  |
| 2. ƿū              |         |      |        |        |                 |       |       |
| 3. hē              |         |      |        |        |                 |       |       |
| <i>Plur.</i> 1. wē | } witen | āgen | cunnen | durren | sculen (scylen) | mægen | mōten |
| 2. gē              |         |      |        |        |                 |       |       |
| 3. hīe             |         |      |        |        |                 |       |       |

NOTE 1 — **Willan** and **sculan** do not often connote simple futurity in Early West Saxon, yet they were fast drifting that way.

The Mn.E. use of *shall* only with the 1st person and *will* only with the 2d and 3d, to express simple futurity, was wholly unknown even in Shakespeare's day. The elaborate distinctions drawn between these words by modern grammarians are not only cumbersome and foreign to the genius of English, but equally lacking in psychological basis.

NOTE 2. — **Sculan** originally implied the idea of (1) *duty*, or *compulsion* (= *ought to*, or *must*), and this conception lurks with more or less prominence in almost every function of **sculan** in O.E. : **Dryhten bebēad Moyses hū hē sceolde beran ðā earce**, *The Lord instructed Moses how he ought to bear the ark*; **Ælc mann sceal be his andgietes mæðe . . . sprecað ðæt he spricð, and dōn ðæt ðæt hē dēð**, *Every man must, according to the measure of his intelligence, speak what he speaks, and do what he does*. Its next most frequent use is to express (2) *custom*, the transition from the obligatory to the customary being an easy one: **Sē byrdesta sceall gyldan fiftýne mearðes fell**, *The man of highest rank pays fifteen marten skins*.

NOTE 3. — **Willan** expressed originally (1) *pure volition*, and this is its most frequent use in O.E. It may occur without the infinitive: **Nylle ic ðæs synfullan dēað, ac ic wille ðæt hē gecyrrē and lybbe**, *I do not desire the sinner's death, but I desire that he return and live*. The wish being father to the intention, **willan** soon came to express (2) *purpose*: **Hē sǣde ðæt hē at sumum cirre wolde fandan hū longe ðæt land norðryhte lǣge**, *He said that he intended, at some time, to investigate how far that land extended northward*.

### Verb-Phrases with *habban*, *bēon* (*wesan*), and *weorðan*.

#### *Verb-Phrases in the Active Voice.*

**138.** The present and preterit of **habban**, combined with a past participle, are used in O.E., as in Mn.E., to form the present perfect and past perfect tenses:

#### PRESENT PERFECT

- Sing.* 1. Ic hæbbe gedrifen  
2. ðū hæfst gedrifen  
3. hē hæfð gedrifen

#### PAST PERFECT.

- Sing.* 1. Ic hæfde gedrifen  
2. ðū hæfdest gedrifen  
3. hē hæfde gedrifen

| PRESENT PERFECT   |                   | PAST PERFECT.      |                   |
|-------------------|-------------------|--------------------|-------------------|
| <i>Plur</i> 1. wē | } habbað gedrifen | <i>Plur.</i> 1. wē | } hæfdon gedrifen |
| 2. gē             |                   | 2. gē              |                   |
| 3. hīe            |                   | 3. hīe             |                   |

The past participle is not usually inflected to agree with the direct object: **Norðymbre** **ꝛnd** **Ēastęngle** **hæfdon** **Ælfrede** **cyninge** **āðas** **geseald** (not *gesealde*, § 82), *The Northumbrians and East Anglians had given king Alfred oaths*; **ꝛnd** **hæfdon** **miclne** **dæl** **ðāra** **horsa** **freten** (not *fretenne*), and (*they*) *had devoured a large part of the horses*.

NOTE. — Many sentences might be quoted in which the participle does agree with the direct object, but there seems to be no clear line of demarcation between them and the sentences just cited. Originally, the participle expressed a *resultant state*, and belonged in sense more to the object than to **habban**; but in Early West Saxon **habban** had already, in the majority of cases, become a pure auxiliary when used with the past participle. This is conclusively proved by the use of **habban** with intransitive verbs. In such a clause, therefore, as **oððæt** **hīe** **hine** **ofslægenne** **hæfdon**, there is no occasion to translate *until they had him slain* (= *resultant state*); the agreement here is more probably due to the proximity of **ofslægenne** to **hine**. So also **ac** **hī** **hæfdon** **þā** **hiera** **stemn** **gesetenne**, *but they had already served out* (*sat out*) *their military term*.

**139.** If the verb is intransitive, and denotes a *change of condition, a departure or arrival*, **bēon** (**wesan**) usually replaces **habban**. The past participle, in such cases, partakes of the nature of an adjective, and generally agrees with the subject: **Mīne** **welan** **þe** **ic** **io** **hæfde** **syndon** **ealle** **gewitene** **ꝛnd** **gedrorene**, *My possessions which I once had are all departed and fallen away*, **wæron** **þā** **męn** **uppe** **on** **lęnde** **of** **āgāne**, *the men had gone up ashore*; **ꝛnd** **þā** **ōpre** **wæron** **hungre** **ācwolen**, and *the*

*others had perished of hunger; qnd ēac sē micla here wæs þā þær tō cumen, and also the large army had then arrived there.*

**140.** A progressive present and preterit (not always, however, with distinctively progressive meanings) are formed by combining a present participle with the present and preterit of *bēon* (*wesan*). The participle remains uninflected: *qnd hīe alle on ðone cyning wærun feohtende, and they all were fighting against the king; Symle hē bið lōciende, nē slæpð hē nāfre, He is always looking, nor does He ever sleep.*

NOTE. — In most sentences of this sort, the subject is masculine (singular or plural); hence no inference can be made as to agreement, since *-e* is the participial ending for both numbers of the nominative masculine (§ 82). By analogy, therefore, the other genders usually conform in inflection to the masculine: *wæron þā ealle þā dēoflu clypigende ānre stefne, then were all the devils crying with one voice.*

*Verb-Phrases in the Passive Voice.*

**141.** Passive constructions are formed by combining *bēon* (*wesan*) or *weorðan* with a past participle. The participle agrees regularly with the subject: *hīe wæron benumene ægðer ge þæs cēapes ge þæs cornes, they were deprived both of the cattle and the corn; hī bēoð āblēnde mið ðām pīostrum heora scylda, they are blinded with the darkness of their sins; and sē wælrēowa Domiciānus on ðām ylcan gēare wearð ācweald, and the murderous Domitian was killed in the same year; qnd Æþelwulf aldormon wearð ofslægen, and Æthelwulf, alderman, was slain.*

NOTE 1. — To express agency, Mn E. employs *by*, rarely *of*; M.E. *of*, rarely *by*; O.E. *fram* (*fram*), rarely *of*: *Sē ðe Godes bebodu*

ne gecnāwð, ne bið hē oncnāwen frōm Gode, *He who does not recognize God's commands, will not be recognized by God*; **Betwux þām wearð ofslagen Eadwine . . . fram Brytta cyninge**, *Meanwhile, Edwin was slain by the king of the Britons*.

NOTE 2. — O.E. had no progressive forms for the passive, and could not, therefore, distinguish between *He is being wounded* and *He is wounded*. It was not until more than a hundred years after Shakespeare's death that *being* assumed this function. **Weorðan**, which originally denoted a *passage from one state to another*, was ultimately driven out by **bēon (wesan)**, and survives now only in *Woe worth (= be to)*.

## 142.

## VOCABULARY.

ðā Beormas, *Permians*.

ðā Ðeniscan, *the Danish (men), Danes*.

ðā Finnas, *Fins*.

ðæt gewald, *control [wealdan]*.

sēo sǣ, *sea*.

sēo scīr, *shire, district*.

sēo wælstōw, *battle-field*.

āgan wælstōwe gewald, *to maintain possession of the battle-field*.

sē wealdend, *ruler, wielder*.

geflīeman, geflīemde, geflīemed, *to put to flight*

gestaðelian, gestaðelode, gestaðelod, *to establish, restore*.

gewissian, gewissode, gewissod, *to guide, direct*.

wīcian, wīcode, gewīcod, *to dwell [wīc = village]*.

## 143.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Qnd ðær wæs micel wæl geslægen on gehwæpre hōnd, qnd Æpelwulf ealdormōn wearþ ofslægen; qnd þā Ðeniscan āhton wælstōwe gewald. 2. Qnd þæs ymb āne mōnaþ gefeaht Ælfred cyning wiþ ealne þone hēre, ond hine geflīemde. 3. Hē sǣde þeah þæt þæt land sīe swīpe lang norþ þonan. 4. þā Beormas hæfdon swīpe wel gebūd (§ 126, Note 2) hiera land. 5. Ohthere sǣde þæt sēo scīr hātte (§ 117, Note 2) Hālgoland, þe hē on (§ 94, (5)) būde. 6. þā Finnas wīcedon be þære sǣ. 7. Dryhten, ælmihtiga (§ 78, Note) God, Wyrhta and Wealdend ealra gesceafta, ic bidde

ðē for ðīnre miclan mildheortnesse ðæt ðū mē gewissie tō ðīnum willan; and gestaðela mīn mōd tō ðīnum willan and tō mīnre sāwle ðearfe. 8. þā sceolde hē ðær bīdan ryhtnorþanwindes, for ðæm þæt land bēag þær sūðryhte, oppe sēo sē in on ðæt land, hē nysse hwæðer. 9. For ðȳ, mē ðyncð bētre, gif ēow swā ðyncð, ðæt wē ēac ðās bēc on ðæt geðēode wēnden ðe wē ealle gecnāwan mægen.

II. 1. When the king heard that, he went (= then went he) westward with his army to Ashdown. 2. Lovest thou me more than these? 3. The men said that the shire which they lived in was called Halgoland. 4. All things were made (**wyrcean**) by God. 5. They were fighting for two days with (= against) the Danes. 6. King Alfred fought with the Danes, and gained the victory; but the Danes retained possession of the battle-field. 7. These men dwelt in England before they came hither. 8. I have not seen the book of (**ymbe**) which you speak (**sprecan**).

## PART III.

---

### SELECTIONS FOR READING.

---

#### INTRODUCTORY.

##### I. The Anglo-Saxon Chronicle.

THIS famous work, a series of progressive annals by unknown hands, embraces a period extending from Cæsar's invasion of England to 1154. It is not known when or where these annals began to be recorded in English.

“The annals from the year 866 — that of Ethelred's ascent of the throne — to the year 887 seem to be the work of one mind. Not a single year is passed over, and to several is granted considerable space, especially to the years 871, 878, and 885. The whole has gained a certain roundness and fulness, because the events — nearly all of them episodes in the ever-recurring conflict with the Danes — are taken in their connection, and the thread dropped in one year is resumed in the next. Not only is the style in itself concise; it has a sort of nervous severity and pithy rigor. The construction is often antiquated, and suggests at times the freedom of poetry; though this purely historical prose is far removed from poetry in profusion of language.” (Ten Brink, *Early Eng. Lit.*, I.)

##### II. The Translations of Alfred.

Alfred's reign (871–901) may be divided into four periods. The *first*, the period of Danish invasion, extends from 871 to



881; the *second*, the period of comparative quiet, from 881 to 893; the *third*, the period of renewed strife (beginning with the incursions of Hasting), from 893 to 897; the *fourth*, the period of peace, from 897 to 901. His literary work probably falls in the second period.\*

The works translated by Alfred from Latin into the vernacular were (1) *Consolation of Philosophy* (*De Consolatione Philosophiae*) by Boëthius (475–525), (2) *Compendious History of the World* (*Historiarum Libri VII*) by Orosius (c. 418), (3) *Ecclesiastical History of the English* (*Historia Ecclesiastica Anglorum*) by Bede (672–735), and (4) *Pastoral Care* (*De Cura Pastoralī*) by Pope Gregory the Great (540–604).

The chronological sequence of these works is wholly unknown. That given is supported by Turner, Arend, Morley, Grein, and Pauli Wülker argues for an exact reversal of this order. According to Ten Brink, the order was more probably (1) *Orosius*, (2) *Bede*, (3) *Boëthius*, and (4) *Pastoral Care*. The most recent contribution to the subject is from Wülffing, who contends for (1) *Bede*, (2) *Orosius*, (3) *Pastoral Care*, and (4) *Boëthius*.

## I. THE BATTLE OF ASHDOWN.

[From the *Chronicle*, Parker MS. The event and date are significant. The Danes had for the first time invaded Wessex. Alfred's older brother, Ethelred, was king; but to Alfred belongs the glory of the victory at Ashdown (Berkshire). Asser (*Life of Alfred*) tells us that for a long time Ethelred remained praying in his tent, while Alfred and his followers went forth "like a wild boar against the hounds."]

1 871. Hēr cuōm<sup>1</sup> sē hēre tō Rēadingum on Westseaxe,  
2 qnd pæs ymb iiii niht ridon ii eorlas ūp. þā gemētte hīe

---

\* There is something inexpressibly touching in this clause from the great king's pen: gif wē ðā stīlnesse habbað. He is speaking of how much he hopes to do, by his translations, for the enlightenment of his people.

1 Æpelwulf aldorman<sup>2</sup> on Ænglafelda, qnd him þær wip ge-  
 2 feaht, qnd sige nam. þæs ymb iiii niht Æpered cyning  
 3 qnd Ælfred his brōpur<sup>3</sup> þær micle fierd tō Rēadingum  
 4 gelæddon, qnd wip þone here gefuhton; qnd þær wæs  
 5 micel wæl geslægen on gehwæpre hōnd, qnd Æpelwulf  
 6 aldormōn wearþ ofslægen; qnd þā Dēniscan āhton wæl-  
 7 stōwe gewald.

8 Qnd þæs ymb iiii niht gefeaht Æpered cyning qnd  
 9 Ælfred his brōpur wip alne<sup>4</sup> þone here on Æscesdūne.  
 10 Qnd hīe wārun<sup>5</sup> on twām gefylcum: on oþrum wæs  
 11 Bāchseġg qnd Halfdeġe þā hāþnan cyningas, qnd on  
 12 oþrum wāron þā eorlas Qnd þā gefeaht sē cyning  
 13 Æpered wip þāra cyninga getruman, qnd þær wearþ sē  
 14 cyning Bāġseġg ofslægen; qnd Ælfred his brōpur wip  
 15 þāra eorla getruman, qnd þær wearþ Sidroc eorl ofslægen  
 16 sē alda,<sup>6</sup> qnd Sidroc eorl sē gioncga,<sup>7</sup> qnd Ōsbearn eorl,  
 17 qnd Frāna eorl, qnd Hareld eorl; qnd þā hērgas<sup>8</sup> bēgen  
 18 gefliemde, qnd fela þūsenda ofslægenra, qnd onfeohtende  
 19 wāron oþ niht.

20 Qnd þæs ymb xiiii niht gefeaht Æpered cyning qnd  
 21 Ælfred his brōður wip þone here æt Basengum, qnd þær  
 22 þā Dēniscan sige nāmon.

23 Qnd þæs ymb ii mōnaþ gefeaht Æpered cyning qnd  
 24 Ælfred his brōpur wip þone here æt Mēretūne, qnd hīe  
 25 wārun on tuām<sup>9</sup> gefylcium, qnd hīe bütū gefliemdon, qnd  
 26 lōnge on dæg sige āhton; qnd þær wearþ micel wælsliht  
 27 on gehwæpere hōnd; qnd þā Dēniscan āhton wælstōwe

---

8 **gefeaht.** Notice that the singular is used. This is the more common construction in O.E. when a compound subject, composed of singular members, follows its predicate. Cf *For thine is the kingdom, and the power, and the glory* See also p. 107, note on **wæs.**

18. **qnd fela þūsenda ofslægenra,** and there were many thousands of slain (§ 91).

1 gewald; qnd þær wearþ Hēahmund bisceop ofslægen,  
 2 qnd fela gōdra mōnna. Qnd æfter þissum gefeohte cuōm<sup>1</sup>  
 3 micel sumorlida.

4 Qnd þæs ofer Ēastron gefōr Æþered cyning; qnd hē  
 5 rīcsode v gēar; qnd his hīc līþ æt Wīnburnan.

6 þā fēng Ælfred Æþelwulfing his brōþur tō Wesseaxna  
 7 rīce. Qnd þæs ymb āne mōnaþ gefeaht Ælfred cyning  
 8 wīþ alne<sup>4</sup> þone hēre lýtle werede<sup>10</sup> æt Wiltūne, qnd hine  
 9 lōnge on dæg gefliemde, qnd þā Dēniscan āhton wælstōwe  
 10 gewald.

11 Qnd þæs gēares wurdon viiii folegefeoht gefohten wīþ  
 12 þone hēre on þȳ cynerīce be sūþan Tēnese, būtan þām þe  
 13 him Ælfred þæs cyninges brōþur qnd ānlīpig aldormōn<sup>2</sup> qnd  
 14 cyninges þegnas oft rāde onridon þe mōn nā ne rīmde;  
 15 qnd þæs gēares wærun<sup>5</sup> ofslægene viiii eorlas qnd ān cyning.  
 16 Qnd þȳ gēare nāmon Westseaxe friþ wīþ þone hēre.

CONSULT GLOSSARY AND PARADIGMS UNDER FORMS GIVEN BELOW.

No note is made of such variants as **y** (**ȳ**) or **i** (**ī**) for **ie** (**īe**) See Glossary, under **ie** (**īe**); occurrences, also, of **and** for **qnd**, **land** for **lōnd**, are found on almost every page of Early West Saxon. Such words should be sought for under the more common forms, **qnd**, **lōnd**.

1 = cwōm

4 = ealne

8 = hēras

2 = ealdormōn.

5 = wæron.

9 = twām

3 = brōþor.

6 = ealda.

10 = werode.

7 = geonga

## II. A PRAYER OF KING ALFRED.

[With this characteristic prayer, Alfred concludes his translation of Boëthius's *Consolation of Philosophy* Unfortunately, the only extant MS. (Bodleian 180) is Late West Saxon I follow, therefore, Prof. A. S. Cook's normalization on an Early West Saxon basis. See Cook's *First Book in Old English*, p 163 ]

12. būtan þām þe, etc., besides which, Alfred . . made raids against them (him), which were not counted. See § 70, Note.

1 Dryhten, ælmihtiga God, Wyrhta and Wealdend ealra  
 2 gesceafta, ic bidde ðē for ðīnre miclan mildheortnesse,  
 3 and for ðære hālgan rōde tæcne, and for Sanctæ Marian  
 4 mægðhāde, and for Sancti Michaelæs gehīersumnesse, and  
 5 for ealra ðīnra hālgena lufan and hiera earnungum, ðæt  
 6 ðū mē gewissie bæt ðonne ic āworhte tō ðē; and gewissa  
 7 mē tō ðīnum willan, and tō mīnre sāwle ðearfe, bæt ðonne  
 8 ic self cunne; and gestaðela mīn mōd tō ðīnum willan and  
 9 tō mīnre sāwle ðearfe; and gestranga mē wið ðæs dēofles  
 10 costnungum; and āfierr fram mē ðā fūlan gālnesse and  
 11 ælce unrihtwīsnesse; and gescield mē wið mīnum wiðer-  
 12 winnum, gesewenlīcum and ungesewenlīcum; and tæc mē  
 13 ðīnne willan tō wyrceanne; ðæt ic mæge ðē inweardlice  
 14 lufian tōforan eallum ðīngum, mid clānum geðance and  
 15 mid clānum lichaman. For ðon ðe ðū eart mīn Scieppend,  
 16 and mīn Ālīesend, mīn Fultum, mīn Frōfor, mīn Trēow-  
 17 nes, and mīn Tōhopa. Sīe ðē lof and wuldor nū and  
 18 ā ā ā, tō worulde būtan æghwīlcum ende. Amen.

### III. THE VOYAGES OF OHTHERE AND WULFSTAN.

[Lauderdale and Cottonian MSS These voyages are an original insertion by Alfred into his translation of Orosius's *Compendious History of the World*

“They consist,” says Ten Brink, “of a complete description of all the countries in which the Teutonic tongue prevailed at Alfred’s time, and a full narrative of the travels of two voyagers, which the king wrote down from their own lips One of these, a Norwegian named Ohtere, had quite

---

3-4. **Marian . . . Michaelæs** O.E. is inconsistent in the treatment of foreign names. They are sometimes naturalized, and sometimes retain in part their original inflections. **Marian**, an original accusative, is here used as a genitive; while **Michaelæs** has the O.E. genitive ending

17. **Sīe ðē lof.** See § 105, 1.

circumnavigated the coast of Scandinavia in his travels, and had even penetrated to the White Sea; the other, named Wulfstan, had sailed from Schleswig to Frische Haff. The geographical and ethnographical details of both accounts are exceedingly interesting, and their style is attractive, clear, and concrete."

Ohthere made two voyages. Sailing first northward along the western coast of Norway, he rounded the North Cape, passed into the White Sea, and entered the Dwina River (*ān micel ēa*). On his second voyage he sailed southward along the western coast of Norway, entered the Skager Rack (*wīdsæ*), passed through the Cattegat, and anchored at the Danish port of Haddeby (*æt Hæþum*), modern Schleswig.

Wulfstan sailed only in the Baltic Sea. His voyage of seven days from Schleswig brought him to Drausen (*Trūsō*) on the shore of the Drausensee.]

### Ohthere's First Voyage.

1 Ōhthere sǣde his hlāforde, ÆlfrEDE cyninge, þæt hē  
2 ealra Norðmōnna norþmest būde. Hē cwæð þæt hē būde  
3 on þǣm lande norþweardum wiþ þā Westsǣ. Hē sǣde  
4 þeah þæt þæt land siE swīpe lang norþ þōnan; ac hit is  
5 eal wēste, būton on fēawum stōwum styccemǣlum wīcīað  
6 Finnas, on huntode on wintra, qnd on sumera on fiscepe  
7 be þære sǣ. Hē sǣde þæt hē æt sumum cirre wolde  
8 fandian hū lōnge þæt land norþryhte lǣge, oþpe hwæðer  
9 ænig mōn be norðan þǣm wēstenne būde. Þā fōr hē  
10 norþryhte be þǣm lande: lēt him ealne weg þæt wēste  
11 land on ðæt stēorbord, qnd þā wīdsǣ on ðæt bæcbord þrīe  
12 dagas. Þā wæs hē swā feor norþ swā þā hwælhuntan  
13 firrest faraþ. Þā fōr hē þā gīet norþryhte swā feor swā  
14 hē meakte on þǣm oþrum þrīm dagum gesiglan. Þā bēag  
15 þæt land þær ēastryhte, oþpe sēo sǣ in on ðæt lōnd, hē  
16 nysse hwæðer, būton hē wisse ðæt hē ðær bād westan-  
17 windes qnd hwōn norþan, qnd siglde ðā east be lande  
18 swā swā hē meakte on fēower dagum gesiglan. Þā  
19 sceolde hē ðær bīdan ryhtnorþanwindes, for ðǣm þæt  
20 land bēag þær sūþryhte, oþpe sēo sǣ in on ðæt land, hē  
21 nysse hwæper. Þā siglde hē þōnan sūðryhte be lande

1 swā swā hē mehte<sup>1</sup> on fif dagum gesiglan. Ðā læg þær  
 2 ān micel ēa ūp in on þæt land. Þā cirdon hīe ūp in on  
 3 ðā ēa, for þæm hīe ne dorston forþ bi þære ēa siglan for  
 4 unfriþe; for þæm ðæt land wæs eall gebūn on oþre healfe  
 5 þære ēas. Ne mētte hē ær nān gebūn land, siþþan hē  
 6 frōm his āgnum hām fōr; ac him wæs ealne weg wēste  
 7 land on þæt stēorbord, būtan fiscerum ond fugelerum ond  
 8 huntum, ond þæt wæron eall Finnas; ond him wæs ā  
 9 wīdsāe on ðæt bæcbord þā Beormas hæfdon swīpe wel  
 10 gebūd hira land: ac hīe ne dorston þær on cuman. Ac  
 11 þāra Terfinna land wæs eal wēste, būton ðær huntan  
 12 gewīcodon, oþþe fisceras, oþþe fugeleras.  
 13 Fela spella him sādōn þā Beormas ægþer ge of hira  
 14 āgnum lande ge of þæm landum þe ymb hīe ūtan wæron;  
 15 ac hē nyste hwæt þæs sōþes wæs, for þæm hē hit self ne  
 16 geseah. Þā Finnas, him pūhte, ond þā Beormas spræcon  
 17 nēah ān geþeode. Swīpost hē fōr ðider, tō ēacan þæs  
 18 landes scēawunge, for þæm horshwælum, for ðæm hīe  
 19 habbað swīpe æpele bān on hiora<sup>2</sup> tōpum—þā tēð hīe brōh-  
 20 ton sume þæm cyninge—ond hiora hȳd bið swīðe gōd tō  
 21 sciprāpum. Sē hwæl bið micle læssa þonne oðre hwalas:  
 22 ne bið hē lēngra ðonne syfan<sup>3</sup> ęlna lang; ac on his āgnum  
 23 lande is sē bētsta hwælhuntað: þā bēoð eahta and fēo-  
 24 wertiges ęlna lange, and þā mæstan fiftiges ęlna lange;  
 25 þāra hē sāde þæt hē syxa sum ofslōge syxtig on twām  
 26 dagum.

---

6. **frōm his āgnum hām** An adverbial dative singular without an inflectional ending is found with **hām**, **ðæg**, **morgen**, and **æfen**.

8. **ond þæt wæron** See § 40, Note 3.

15 **hwæt þæs sōþes wæs**. Sweet errs in explaining **sōþes** as attracted into the genitive by **þæs**. It is not a predicate adjective, but a partitive genitive after **hwæt**.

25. **syxa sum**. See § 91, Note 2.

1 Hē wæs swyðde spēdig man on þām æhtum þe heora<sup>2</sup>  
2 spēda on bēoð, þæt is, on wildrum. Hē hæfde þā gýt, ðā  
3 hē þone cyninge<sup>5</sup> sōhte, tamra dēora unbebohtra syx hund.  
4 Þā dēor hī hātað ‘hrānas’; þāra wāeron syx stælhānas;  
5 ðā bēoð swyðde dýre mid Finnum, for ðām hý fōð þā  
6 wildan hrānas mid. Hē wæs mid þām fyrstum mannum  
7 on þām lande: næfde hē þeah mā ðonne twēntig hryðera,  
8 and twēntig scēapa, and twēntig swýna; and þæt lýtle  
9 þæt hē ƿrede, hē ƿrede mid horsan.<sup>4</sup> Ac hyra ār is mæst  
10 on þām gafole þe ðā Finnas him gyldað. Þæt gafol bið  
11 on dēora fellum, and on fugela feðerum, and hwales bāne,  
12 and on þām sciprāpum þe bēoð of hwæles hýde geworht  
13 and of sēoles. Æghwile gylt be hys gebyrdum. Sē byrd-  
14 esta sceall gyldan fiftýne mearðes fell, and fif hrānes,  
15 and ān beren fel, and týn ambra feðra, and berenne kyr-  
16 tel oððe yterenne, and twēgen sciprāpas; ægþer sý syxtig  
17 ƿlna lang, oþer sý of hwæles hýde geworht, oþer of sīoles.<sup>6</sup>  
18 Hē sāde ðæt Norðmanna land wāere swýpe lang and  
19 swyðde smæl. Eal þæt his man āðer oððe ƿttan oððe ƿrian  
20 mæg, þæt līð wið ðā sē; and þæt is þeah on sumum  
21 stōwum swyðde clūdig; and licgað wilde mōras wið ēastan  
22 and wið ūpp on emnlange þām býnum lande. On þām  
23 mōrum eardiað Finnas. And þæt býne land is ēaste-  
24 weard brādost, and symle swā norðor swā smæle. Eāste-  
25 wērd<sup>7</sup> hit mæg bīon<sup>8</sup> syxtig mīla brād, oþpe hwēne brædre;  
26 and middeweard þritig oððe brædre; and norðeweard hē  
27 cwæð, þær hit smalost wāere, þæt hit mihte bēon þreora  
28 mīla brād tō þām mōre; and sē mōr syðþan,<sup>9</sup> on sumum

---

2. on bēoð. See § 94, (5).

19. Eal þæt his man. Pronominal genitives are not always possessive in O.E.; **his** is here the partitive genitive of **hit**, the succeeding relative pronoun being omitted: *All that (portion) of it that may, either-of-the-two, either be grazed or plowed, etc.* (§ 70, Note).

1 stōwum, swā brād swā man mæg on twām wucum ofer-  
 2 fēran; and on sumum stōwum swā brād swā man mæg  
 3 on syx dagum oferfēran.

4 Ðonne is tōemnes þæm lande sūðewardum, on oðre  
 5 healfe þæs mōres, Swēoland, oþ þæt land norðeward;  
 6 and tōemnes þæm lande norðewardum, Cwēna land. Þā  
 7 Cwēnas heƕgiað hwilum on ðā Norðmen ofer ðone mōr,  
 8 hwilum þā Norðmen on hƕ. And þær sint swīðe micle  
 9 meƕras fersce geond þā mōras; and berað þā Cwēnas hyra  
 10 scypu ofer land on ðā meƕras, and þanon heƕgiað on ðā  
 11 Norðmen; hƕ habbað swƕðe lƕtle scypa and swƕðe  
 12 leohte.

1 = meahte, mihte.

4 = horsum

7 = -ward.

2 = hiera.

5 = cyning.

8 = bēon.

3 = seofon.

6 = sēoles

9 = siððan.

### Onthere's Second Voyage.

13 Ōnthere sǣde þæt sio<sup>1</sup> scīr hǣtte Hālgoland, þe hē on  
 14 būde. Hē cwæð þæt nān man ne būde be norðan him.  
 15 Þonne is ān port on sūðewardum þæm lande, þone man  
 16 hǣt Sciringeshēal. Þyder hē cwæð þæt man ne mihte  
 17 geseglian on ānum mōnðe, gyf man on niht wīcode, and  
 18 ælce dæge hǣfde ambyrne wind; and ealle ðā hwile hē  
 19 sceal seglian be lande. And on þæt stēorbord him bið  
 20 ærest Īraland, and þonne ðā igland þe synd betux Īra-  
 21 lande and þissum lande. Þonne is þis land, oð hē cymð  
 22 tō Sciringeshēale, and ealne weg on þæt bæcbord Norð-

---

11-12. **scypa . . . leohte.** These words exhibit inflections more frequent in Late than in Early West Saxon. The normal forms would be **scypu, leoht**; but in Late West Saxon the **-u** of short-stemmed neuters is generally replaced by **-a**; and the nominative accusative plural neuter of adjectives takes, by analogy, the masculine endings: **hwate, gōde, hālge, instead of hwatu, gōd, hālgu.**



1 weg. Wið sūðan þone Sciringeshēal fylð swýðe mycel  
 2 sē ūp in on ðæt land; sēo is brādre þonne ænig man ofer  
 3 sēon mæge. And is Gotland on oðre healfe ongēan, and  
 4 siððan Sillēnde. Sēo sē lið mænig<sup>2</sup> hund mīla ūp in on  
 5 þæt land.

6 And of Sciringeshēale hē cwæð ðæt hē seglode on fif  
 7 dagan<sup>3</sup> tō þæm porte þe mōn hāt æt Hæpum; sē stent  
 8 betuh Winedum, and Seaxum, and Angle, and hýrð in  
 9 on Dene. Ðā hē piderweard seglode fram Sciringes-  
 10 hēale, þā wæs him on þæt bæcbord Denameare and on  
 11 þæt stēorbord wīdsæ þrý dagas; and þā, twēgen dagas ær  
 12 hē tō Hæpum cōme, him wæs on þæt stēorbord Gotland,  
 13 and Sillēnde, and īglanda fela. On þæm landum eardo-  
 14 don Engle, ær hī hider on land cōman.<sup>4</sup> And hym wæs  
 15 ðā twēgen dagas on ðæt bæcbord þā īgland þe in on  
 16 Denumearce hýrað.

1 = sēo.

2 = mōnig

3 = dagum.

4 = cōmen.

### Wulfstan's Voyage.

17 Wulfstān sēde þæt hē gefōre of Hæðum, þæt hē wære  
 18 on Trūsō on syfan dagum and nihtum, þæt þæt scip wæs  
 19 ealne weg yrnende under segle. Weonoðland him wæs

---

7 **æt Hæpum.** "This pleonastic use of *æt* with names of places occurs elsewhere in the older writings, as in the Chronicle (552), 'in þære stōwe þe is genemned æt Searobyrg,' where the *æt* has been erased by some later hand, showing that the idiom had become obsolete Cp. the German 'Gasthaus zur Krone,' Stamboul = *es tām pōlīn*" (Sweet) See, also, *Atterbury*, § 28, Note 3.

14-15. **wæs . . . þā īgland.** The singular predicate is due again to inversion (p. 100, note on **gefeahrt**). The construction is comparatively rare in O. E., but frequent in Shakespeare and in the popular speech of to-day Cf *There is, Here is, There has been*, etc., with a (single) plural subject following.

1 on stēorbord, and on bæcbord him wæs Langaland, and  
 2 Læland, and Falster, and Scōnēg; and pās land eall  
 3 hȳrað tō Dēnemearcan. And þonne Burgenda land wæs  
 4 ūs on bæcbord, and pā habbað him sylfe<sup>1</sup> cyning. Þonne  
 5 æfter Burgenda lande wæron ūs pās land, pā synd hātene  
 6 ærest Blēcinga-ēg, and Mēore, and Ēowland, and Gotland  
 7 on bæcbord; and pās land hȳrað tō Swēom. And Weo-  
 8 nodland, wæs ūs ealne weg on stēorbord oð Wīslēmūðan.  
 9 Sēo Wīslē is swȳðe mycel ēa, and hīo<sup>2</sup> tōlīð Wītland and  
 10 Weonodland; and pæt Wītland belimpeð tō Estum; and  
 11 sēo Wīslē līð ūt of Weonodlande, and līð in Estmēre;  
 12 and sē Estmēre is hūru fiftēne<sup>3</sup> mīla brād. Þonne cymeð  
 13 Ilfing ēastan in Estmēre of ðæm mēre, ðe Trūsō standeð  
 14 in stæðe; and cumað ūt samod in Estmēre, Ilfing ēastan  
 15 of Estlande, and Wīslē sūðan of Winodlande. And  
 16 þonne benimð Wīslē Ilfing hire naman, and ligeð of þæm  
 17 mēre west and norð on sē; for ðȳ hit man hæt Wīslē  
 18 mūða.

19 Þæt Estland is swȳðe mycel, and pær bið swȳðe manig  
 20 burh, and on ælcere byrig bið cyning. And pær bið  
 21 swȳðe mycel hunig, and fiscnað; and sē cyning and pā  
 22 ricostan mēn drincað mȳran meole, and pā unspēdigan  
 23 and pā pēowan drincað medo.<sup>4</sup> pær bið swȳðe mycel  
 24 gewinn betwēonan him. And ne bið ðær nānig ealo<sup>5</sup>  
 25 gebrowen mid Estum, ac pær bið medo genōh. And pær  
 26 is mid Estum ðēaw, þonne pær bið man dēad, pæt hē līð  
 27 inne unforbærned mid his māgum and frēondum mōnað,  
 28 ge hwīlum twēgen; and pā cyningas, and pā oðre hēah-  
 29 ðungene mēn, swā mīcle lēncg<sup>6</sup> swā hī māran spēda  
 30 habbað, hwīlum healf gēar pæt hī bēoð unforbærned, and

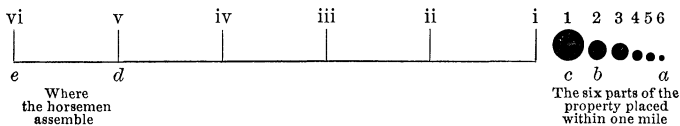
---

1-4. **him . . . ūs.** Note the characteristic change of person, the transition from *indirect* to *direct discourse*.

1 licgað bufan eorðan on hyra hūsum. And ealle þā hwile  
 2 þe þæt lic bið inne, þær sceal bēon gedrync and plega,  
 3 oð ðone dæg þe hī hine forbærnað. Þonne þȳ ylcan dæge  
 4 þe hī hine tō þæm āde beran wyllað, þonne tōdælað hī  
 5 his feoh, þæt þær tō lāfe bið æfter þæm gedrynce and þæm  
 6 plegan, on fif oððe syx, hwȳlum on mā, swā swā þæs fēos  
 7 andefn bið. Ālęcgað hit ðonne forhwæga on ānre mīle  
 8 þone mæstan dæl fram þæm tūne, þonne oðerne, ðonne  
 9 þone þridan, oþ þe hyt eall ālēd bið on þære ānre mīle;  
 10 and sceall bēon sē læsta dæl nȳhst þæm tūne ðe sē dēada  
 11 man on līð. Ðonne sceolon<sup>7</sup> bēon gesamnode ealle ðā  
 12 męnn ðe swyftoste hors habbað on þæm lande, forhwæga  
 13 on fif mīlum oððe on syx mīlum fram þæm fēo. Þonne  
 14 ærnað hȳ ealle tōweard þæm fēo: ðonne cymeð sē man  
 15 sē þæt swiftoste hors hafað tō þæm ærestan dæle and tō  
 16 þæm mæstan, and swā ælc æfter oðrum, oþ hit bið eall  
 17 genumen; and sē nimð þone læstan dæl sē nȳhst þæm  
 18 tūne þæt feoh gearneð. And þonne rideð ælc hys weg  
 19 mid ðæm fēo, and hyt mōtan<sup>8</sup> habban eall; and for ðȳ  
 20 þær bēoð þā swiftan hors ungefōge dȳre. And þonne his  
 21 gestrēon bēoð þus eall āspęded, þonne byrð man hine ūt,  
 22 and forbærneð mid his wæpnum and hrægle; and swīðost

2. **sceal.** See § 137, Note 2 (2).

7 **Ālęcgað hit** Bosworth illustrates thus:



“The horsemen assemble five or six miles from the property, at *d* or *e*, and run towards *c*; the man who has the swiftest horse, coming first to 1 or *c*, takes the first and largest part. The man who has the horse coming second takes part 2 or *b*, and so, in succession, till the least part, 6 or *a*, is taken.”

1 ealle hys spēda h̄y forspēndað mid þ̄æm langan legere  
 2 þæs dēadan mannes inne, and þæs þe h̄y be þ̄æm wegum  
 3 ālēgað, þe ðā frēndan tō ærnað, and nimað. And þæt  
 4 is mid Estum þ̄eaw þæt þ̄ær sceal ælces geðēodes man  
 5 bēon forbærned; and gyf þ̄ār<sup>9</sup> man ān bān findeð unfor-  
 6 bærned, hī hit sceolan<sup>7</sup> miclum gebētan. And þ̄ær is mid  
 7 Estum ān mægð þæt hī magon cyle gewyrcean; and þ̄y  
 8 þ̄ær licgað þā dēadan mēn swā lange, and ne fūliað, þæt  
 9 h̄y wyrcað þone cyle him on. And þ̄eah man āsētte  
 10 twēgen fātels full ealað oððe wāteres, h̄y gedōð þæt  
 11 āgþer bið oferfrozen, sam hit s̄y sumor sam winter.

<sup>1</sup> = selfe.

<sup>4</sup> = medu.

<sup>7</sup> = sculon.

<sup>2</sup> = hēo.

<sup>5</sup> = ealu

<sup>8</sup> = mōton

<sup>3</sup> = fiftiene

<sup>6</sup> = lēng.

<sup>9</sup> = ð̄ær

---

5-6. **man . . . hī.** Here the plural **hī** refers to the singular **man**. Cf p. 109, ll. 18-19, **ælc . . . mōtan** In *Exodus* xxxii, 24, we find "*Whosoever* hath any gold, let *them* break it off"; and Addison writes, "I do not mean that I think *anyone* to blame for taking due care of *their* health" The construction, though outlawed now, has been common in all periods of our language. Paul very sanely remarks (*Principien der Sprachgeschichte*, § 451) that "When a word is used as an indefinite [one, man, somebody, etc.] it is, strictly speaking, incapable of any distinction of number. Since, however, in respect of the external form, a particular number has to be chosen, it is a matter of indifference which this is . . . Hence a change of numbers is common in the different languages"

# I. GLOSSARY.

## OLD ENGLISH—MODERN ENGLISH.

[The order of words is strictly alphabetical, except that **ð** follows **t**.  
The combination **æ** follows **ad**

Gender is indicated by the abbreviations, m (= masculine), f. (= feminine), n. (= neuter), instead of the gender forms of the definite article.]

### A.

**ā**, *ever, always, aye.*

**ābreca**n (§ 120, Note 2), *to break down, destroy.*

**ac**, *but.*

**ād**, m., *funeral pile*

**adesa**, m., *hatchet, adze*

**æfter** (§ 94, (1)), *after; æfter ðæm, after that, thereafter; æfter ðæm ðe, after (conjunction).*

**æghwā** (§ 77, Note), *each, every.*

**æghwīlc** (§ 77, Note), *each, any*

**ægdōer** (**æghwæðer**, **ādōer**) (§ 77, Note), *each, either; ægþer . . . oþer . . . oþer, either . . . or . . . or; ægþer ge . . . ge (§ 95, (2)), *both . . . and.**

**æht**, f, *property, possession.*

**ælc** (§ 77), *each, every.*

**ælmīhtig**, *almighty.*

**æmetta**, m., *leisure.*

**ænig** (§ 77), *any.*

**æf**, *ere, before; æf ðæm ðe, before (conjunction).*

**æresta** (§ 96, (4)), *first.*

**ærn**an (§ 127), *to ride, gallop [iernan].*

**Æsc**edūn, f., *Ashdown* (in Berkshire)

**æt** (§ 94, (1)), *at.*

**æðele**, *noble, excellent.*

**æðeling**, m., *a noble, prince.*

**Æðelwulfing**, m., *son of Ethelwulf.*

**Æðered**, m, *Ethelred.*

**āfierran** (§ 127), *to remove [feor].*

**āgan** (§ 136), *to own, possess, gain.*

**āgen**, *own [āgan]; dative singular = āgnum.*

**āhton**, see **āgan**.

**ālęcgan** (§ 125, Note), *to lay down [licgan].*

**ālęd**, see **ālęcgan**.

**Āliesend**, m., *Redeemer [āliesan = to release, ransom]*

**ambor**, m, *measure*, genitive plural = **ambra** (§ 27, (4)).

**ambyre**, *favorable.*

**ān** (§ 89), *one, an, a.*

**andēfn**, f., *proportion, amount*.  
**Angel**, n, *Anglen* (in Denmark);  
 dative singular = **Angle** (§ 27,  
 (4)).  
**ānlīpig**, *single, individual*.  
**ār**, f., *honor, property*.  
**ārīsan** (§ 102), *to arise*.  
**āseġtan** (§ 127), *to set, place*.  
**āspendan** (§ 127), *to spend, ex-*  
*pend*.  
**āð**, m, *oath*.  
**āðer**, see **æġðer**.  
**aweg**, *away*  
**āwyrca**n (§ 128), *to work, do,*  
*perform*.

## B.

**Bāchseġc**, m, *Bagsac*.  
**bæcbord**, n., *larboard, left side*  
*of a ship*.  
**bān**, n., *bone*.  
**Basengas**, m., plural, *Basing* (in  
 Hantshire)  
**be** (**bī**) (§ 94, (1)), *by, about, near,*  
*along, according to*; **be norðan**  
**þām wēstenne** (§ 94, (4)),  
*north of the waste (desert)*.  
**bēag**, see **būgan**.  
**bearn**, n, *child*  
**bēgen** (declined like **twēgen**,  
 § 89), *both*  
**beginnan** (§ 110), *to begin*.  
**belimpan** (§ 110), *to belong*.  
**beniman** (§ 114), *to take, derive*.  
**bēon** (§ 134), *to be*  
**Beormas**, m, plural, *Permians*  
**beran** (§ 114), *to bear*.  
**beren**, *of a bear*.  
**bēt**, see **wel** (§ 97, (2)).  
**bētsta**, see **gōd** (§ 96, (3)).  
**betuh**, (§ 94, (1)), *between*  
**betwēonan**, (§ 94, (1)), *between*.

**bī**, see **be**.  
**bīdan** (§ 102), *to expect, await*  
 (with genitive).  
**biddan** (§ 115, Note 2), *to pray,*  
*request* (§ 65, Note 3).  
**bindan** (§ 110), *to bind*.  
**bisceop**, m., *bishop* [episcopus].  
**Blēcinga-ēg**, f, *Blekingen*.  
**blīðe**, *blithe, happy*.  
**bōc** (§ 68, (1), Note 1), f., *book*.  
**bōcere**, m., *scribe*.  
**bōna** (**bana**), m., *murderer*.  
**brād**, *broad*.  
**brædra**, see **brād** (§ 96, (1)).  
**bringan** (§ 128), *to bring*.  
**brōhton**, see **bringan**.  
**brōðor** (**brōður**) (§ 68, (2)),  
*brother*.  
**brūcan** (§ 109, Note 1), *to enjoy*  
 (§ 62, Note 1).  
**brȳcð**, see **brūcan**.  
**brycg**, f, *bridge*.  
**būan** (§ 126, Note 2), *to dwell,*  
*cultivate*  
**būde**, see **būan**.  
**bufan**, *above* (with dative and ac-  
 cusative)  
**būgan** (§ 109, Note 1), *to bend,*  
*turn*  
**burg** (§ 68, (1), Note), f., *city,*  
*borough*; dative singular =  
**byrig**  
**Burgenda**, m., genitive plural,  
*of the Burgundians*; **Burgenda**  
**land**, *Bornholm*.  
**burh**, see **burg**.  
**būtan** (**būton**) (§ 94, (1); § 95,  
 (1)), *except, except for, except*  
*that, unless, without*.  
**būtū**, *both* (= *both-two*. The word  
 is composed of the combined  
 neuters of **bēgen** and **twēgen**,

but is masculine and feminine as well as neuter).

**bȳn** (§ 126, Note 2), *cultivated*  
**byrde**, of high rank, aristocratic.  
**byrig**, see **burg**.  
**byrð**, see **beran**.

## C.

**cēosan** (§ 109), *to choose*.  
**cild**, n., *child*.  
**cirdon**, see **cirran**.  
**cirice**, f, *church*.  
**cirr** (**cierr**), m, *time, occasion*.  
**cirran** (**cierran**) (§ 127), *to turn, go*.  
**clæne**, *clean, pure*.  
**clūdig**, *rocky*  
**cnapa**, m., *boy*  
**cniht**, m., *warrior, knight*.  
**costnung**, f., *temptation*.  
**Crīst**, m, *Christ*.  
**cuma**, m, *stranger*.  
**cuman** (§ 114), *to come*.  
**cunnan** (§ 137), *to know, can*.  
**cunne**, see **cunnan**.  
**cwalu**, f, *death, murder*  
**cwelan** (§ 114), *to die*.  
**cwēn**, f., *queen*.  
**Cwēnas**, m., plural, *a Finnish tribe*  
**cweðan** (§ 115), *to say*.  
**cwōm**, see **cuman**.  
**cyle** (**ciele**), m., *cold* [chill];  
**cyle gewyrcean**, *to produce cold, to freeze*  
**cynerīce**, n, *kingdom*.  
**cyning**, m., *king*

## D.

**dæd**, f, *deed*  
**dæg**, m., *day*.

**dæl**, n, *dale*.

**dæil**, m, *part, division*.

**dēad**, *dead*.

**Denamearc**, see **Denemearc**.

**Dene** (§ 47), m., plural, *Danes*.

**Denemearc** (**Denemearce**), f.,  
*Denmark*, dative singular =  
**Denemearce** (strong), **Denemearcan** (weak).

**Denisc**, *Danish*; **ðā Deniscan**,  
*the Danes*.

**dēofol**, m, n., *devil*; genitive  
singular = **dēofles** (§ 27, (4)).

**dēor**, n, *wild animal*.

**dōn** (§ 135), *to do, cause*.

**dorston**, see **durran**.

**Dryhten**, m., *lord, the Lord*.

**durran** (§ 137), *to dare*.

**duru**, f., *door*.

**dȳre** (**dīere**), *dear, costly*.

## E.

**ēa**, f., *river*; genitive singular =  
**ēas**; dative and accusative sin-  
gular = **ēa**

**ēac**, *also*

**ēaca**, m, *addition* [**ēac**]; **tō**  
**ēacan**, *in addition to* (§ 94,  
(4)).

**ēage**, n, *eye*.

**eahta**, *eight*.

**ealað**, see **ealu**.

**eald** (§ 96, (2)), *old*

**ealdormōn**, m, *alderman, chief*  
*magistrate*

**eall** (**eal**), *all*; **ealne weg**, *all*  
*the way* (§ 98, (1)).

**ealu** (§ 68), n, *ale*; genitive  
singular = **ealað**.

**eardian** (§ 130), *to dwell*.

**ēare**, n., *ear*.

**earn**, *poor*.  
**earnung**, f., *merit* [earning].  
**ēast**, *east*.  
**ēastan** (§ 93, (5)), *from the east*.  
**ēasteward**, *eastward*.  
**ēastrihte** (§ 93, (6)), *eastward*.  
**Ēastron**, plural, *Easter*.  
**ēastryhte**, see **ēastrihte**.  
**eln**, f., *ell*.  
**emnlōg** (**emnlang**), *equally long*; on **emnlange**, *along* (§ 94, (4)).  
**ēnde**, m, *end*.  
**engel**, m, *angel*.  
**Englafeld** (§ 51), m., *Englefield* (in Berkshire).  
**Engle** (§ 47), m., plural, *Angles*.  
**ēode**, see **gān**.  
**eorl**, m., *earl, chieftain*.  
**eorðe**, f., *earth*.  
**ēow**, see **ðū**.  
**Ēowland**, n., *Öland* (an island in the Baltic Sea).  
**ęrian** (§ 125), *to plow*.  
**Estland**, n., *land of the Estas* (on the eastern coast of the Baltic Sea).  
**Estmere**, m., *Frische Haſf*.  
**Estum**, m., dative plural, *the Estas*.  
**etan** (§ 115), *to eat*.  
**ęttan** (§ 127), *to graze* [etan].

## F.

**fæder** (§ 68, (2)), m., *father*.  
**fæt**, n., *vessel*.  
**fætels**, m., *vessel*; accusative plural = **fætels**.  
**Falster**, *Falster* (island in the Baltic Sea).  
**fandian** (§ 130), *to try, investigate* [findan].

**faran** (§ 116), *to go*.  
**feallan** (§ 117), *to fall, flow*.  
**fēawe**, *few*.  
**fela** (indeclinable), *many, much* (with genitive).  
**feld** (§ 51), m., *field*.  
**fell** (**fel**), n., *fell, skin, hide*.  
**fēng**, see **fōn**.  
**feoh**, n., *cattle, property* [fee]; genitive and dative singular = **fēos**, **fēo**.  
**feohtan** (§ 110), *to fight*.  
**fēond** (§ 68, (3)), *enemy, fiend*.  
**feor** (§ 96, (4)), *far*.  
**fēowertig**, *forty*; genitive = **fēowertiges** (§ 91, Note 1).  
**fersc**, *fresh*.  
**feðer**, f., *feather*.  
**fierd**, f, *English army*.  
**fif**, *five*.  
**fiftiene**, *fifteen*.  
**fiftig**, *fifty*; genitive = **fiftiges** (§ 91, Note 1).  
**findan** (§ 110), *to find*.  
**Finnas**, m., plural, *Fins*.  
**firrest** (**fierrest**), see **feor**.  
**fiscað** (**fiscnað**), m., *fishing*.  
**fiscere**, m., *fisherman*.  
**fiscnað**, see **fiscað**.  
**folc**, n, *folk, people*.  
**folcgefeoh**, n, *battle, general engagement*.  
**fōn** (§ 118), *to seize, capture, take*; **tō rīce fōn**, *to come to (ascend) the throne*.  
**for** (§ 94, (1)), *for, on account of*; **for ðæm** (**ðe**), **for ðon** (**ðe**), *because*; **for ðȳ**, *therefore*.  
**fōr**, see **faran**.  
**forbærnan** (§ 127), *to burn*.  
**forhwæga**, *about, at least*.



forspēndan (§ 127), *to squander*.  
 forð, *forth, forward*.  
 Fræna, *m, Frene*.  
 frēnde, *strange, foreign; ðā frēmdan, the strangers*.  
 frēodōm, *m, freedom*.  
 frið, *m, n., peace, security*  
 frōfor, *f., consolation*  
 frōm (fram) (§ 94, (1)), *from, by*.  
 fugela, *see fugol*.  
 fugelere, *m., fowler*.  
 fugol (fugel), *m., bird*.  
 fūl, *foul*.  
 fūlian (§ 130), *to grow foul, decompose*  
 full, *full (with genitive)*.  
 fultum, *m., help*.  
 fylð, *see feallan*  
 fyrst, *chief, first*.

G.

gafol, *n, tax, tribute*.  
 gālnes, *f., lust, impurity*.  
 gān (§ 134), *to go*.  
 gār, *m., spear*.  
 ge, *and; see ægðer*  
 geærnan (§ 127), *to gain by running [iernan]*.  
 gēar, *n, year*.  
 gebētan (§ 126), *to make amends for [bōt = remedy]*.  
 gebrēowan (§ 109), *to brew*  
 gebrowen, *see gebrēowan*.  
 gebūd, *see būan*.  
 gebūn, *see būan*  
 gebyrd, *n, rank, social distinction*.  
 gecnāwan (§ 117), *to understand*  
 gedōn (§ 134), *to do, cause*.

gedrync, *n, drinking*.  
 gefaran (§ 116), *to go, die*.  
 gefeaht, *see gefeohtan*.  
 gefeoht, *n, fight, battle*.  
 gefeohtan (§ 110), *to fight*  
 geflieman (§ 126), *to put to flight*.  
 gefohten, *see gefeohtan*.  
 gefōr, *see gefaran*  
 gefuhton, *see gefeohtan*.  
 gefylce, *n, troop, division; dative plural = gefylcum, gefylcium*.  
 gehiersumnes, *f., obedience*.  
 gehwæðer (§ 77, Note), *either, both*.  
 gelædan (§ 126), *to lead*.  
 gemētan (§ 126), *to meet*.  
 genōh, *enough*.  
 genumen, *see niman*.  
 geoc, *n., yoke*.  
 geond (§ 94, (2)), *throughout*.  
 geong (§ 96, (2)), *young*.  
 gerecednes, *f, narration*.  
 gesamnode, *see gesōmnian*.  
 gesceaft, *f, creature, creation*  
 gesceap, *n, creation*.  
 gescieldan (§ 127), *to shield, defend*.  
 geseglian (§ 130), *to sail*.  
 gesēon (§ 118), *to see*  
 geset, *n, habitation, seat*  
 gesewenlic, *visible [past participle of sēon + lic.]*  
 gesiglan (§ 127), *to sail*.  
 geslægen, *see slēan (§ 118)*  
 gesōmnian (§ 130), *to assemble*.  
 gestaðelian (§ 130), *to establish, restore*.  
 gestrangian (§ 130), *to strengthen*.  
 gestrēon, *n, property*  
 geswīcan (§ 102), *to cease, cease from (with genitive)*  
 getruma, *m., troop, division*.

geðanc, m, n, *thought*.  
 geðēode, n, *language, tribe*.  
 gewald (geweald), n, *control, possession, power*.  
 gewinn, n, *strife*.  
 gewissian (§ 130), *to guide, direct*.  
 gewyrc(e)an (§ 128), *to work, create, make, produce*.  
 giefu, f, *gift*.  
 gīet (gȳt), *yet, still*.  
 gif, *if*.  
 glæd, *glad*.  
 God, m, *God*.  
 gōd, *good*.  
 Gotland, n, *Jutland (in Ohthere's Second Voyage), Gothland (in Wulfstan's Voyage)*.  
 grōwan (§ 117, (2)), *to grow*.  
 guma, m, *man*.  
 gyf, *see gif*.  
 gylðan (gielðan) (§ 110), *to pay*;  
 3d singular indicative = *gylt*.  
 gȳt, *see gīet*.

## H.

habban (§ 133), *to have*.  
 hæt, *see hātan*.  
 hæðen, *heathen*.  
 Hæðum (æt Hæðum), *Haddeby (= Schleswig)*.  
 hāl, *hale, whole*.  
 Halfdene, m, *Halfdene*.  
 hālga, m, *saint*.  
 Hālgoland, n, *Halgoland (in ancient Norway)*.  
 hālig, *holy*.  
 hālignes, f, *holiness*.  
 hām, m, *home*; dative singular =  
 hāme, hām (p. 104, Note).  
 hand, *see hōnd*

hātan (§ 117, Note 2), *to call, name, command*.  
 hātte, *see hātan*.  
 hē, hēo, hit (§ 53), *he, she, it*.  
 hēafod, n, *head*.  
 hēahðungen, *highly prosperous, aristocratic [hēah + past participle of ðeon (§ 118)]*.  
 healdan (§ 117), *to hold*.  
 healf (adjective), *half*.  
 healf, f, *half, side, shore*.  
 heall, f, *hall*.  
 heard, *hard*.  
 hēawan (§ 117), *to hew, cut*.  
 helan (§ 114), *to conceal*.  
 helpan (§ 110), *to help (with dative)*.  
 heofon, m., *heaven*.  
 heora (hiera), *see hē*.  
 heorte, f, *heart*.  
 hēr, *here, in this year*.  
 hēre, m., *Danish army*.  
 hērgan (§ 130), *to raid, harry, ravage [hēre]*.  
 hērgung, f, *harrying, plundering*.  
 hider, *hither*.  
 hiera, *see hē*.  
 hīeran (hȳran) (§ 126), *to hear, belong*.  
 hierde, m, *shepherd*.  
 hira, *see hē*.  
 hlāford, m, *lord, master*.  
 hof, n, *court, abode*.  
 hōnd (hand), f., *hand, on gehwæðre hōnd, on both sides*.  
 hors, n, *horse*.  
 horshwæl, m., *walrus*.  
 hrægel, n, *garment*; dative singular = *hrægle*.  
 hrān, m, *reindeer*.  
 hryðer, n., *cattle*.  
 hū, *how*.

**hund**, *hundred*.  
**hunig**, n., *honey*.  
**hunta**, m., *hunter*.  
**huntoð** (*huntað*), m., *hunting*.  
**hūru**, *about*.  
**hūs**, n., *house*.  
**hwā**, **hwæt** (§ 74), *who? what?*  
**hwæl**, m., *whale*.  
**hwæluhunta**, m., *whale-fisher*.  
**hwæluhuntað**, m., *whale-fishing*.  
**hwær**, *where?*  
**hwæðer**, *whether, which of the two?*  
**hwēne**, see **hwōn**.  
**hwīl**, f., *while, time*; **ealle ðā hwīle ðe**, *all the while that*; **hwīlum** (instrumental plural), *sometimes*.  
**hwōn**, n., *a trifle*; **hwēne** (instrumental singular), *somewhat, a little*.  
**hȳ** (**hīe**), see **hē**.  
**hȳd**, f., *hide, skin*.  
**hyra** (**hiera**), see **hē**.  
**hȳran**, see **hīeran**.  
**hys** (**his**), see **hē**.  
**hyt** (**hit**), see **hē**.

## I.

**ic** (§ 72), *I*.  
**ieldra**, see **eald**.  
**iernan** (**yrnan**) (§ 112), *to run*.  
**īgland**, see **īglōnd**.  
**īglōnd**, n., *island*.  
**ilca** (**ylca**), *the same*.  
**īfing**, *the Elbing*.  
**in**, *in, into* (with dative and accusative); **in on** (with accusative); *in on, to, toward*.  
**inne**, *within, inside*.  
**inweardlice**, *inwardly, fervently*

**īraland**, n., *Ireland* (but in *Oht-heres Second Voyage*, *Iceland* is doubtless meant).

## K

**kyrtel**, m., *kirtle, coat*.

## L.

**læge**, see **licgan**.  
**Læland**, n., *Laaland* (in Denmark).  
**læssa**, see **lȳtel**.  
**læsta**, see **lȳtel**.  
**lætan** (§ 117), *to let, leave*.  
**lāf**, f., *remnant*; **tō lāfe**, *as a remnant, remaining*.  
**land**, see **lōnd**.  
**lang**, see **lōng**.  
**Langaland**, n., *Langeland* (in Denmark).  
**leger**, n., *lying in, illness* [**licgan**].  
**lēng**, see **lōnge**.  
**lēngra**, see **lōng**.  
**lēof**, *dear*.  
**leoht**, *light*.  
**lēt**, see **lætan**.  
**lic**, n., *body, corpse*.  
**licgan** (§ 115, Note 2), *to lie, extend, flow*, 3d singular indicative = **ligeð**, **lið**.  
**līchama**, m., *body*.  
**ligeð**, see **licgan**.  
**lim**, n., *limb*.  
**lið**, see **licgan**.  
**lof**, m., *praise, glory*.  
**lōnd** (**land**), n., *land, country*.  
**lōng** (**lang**) (§ 96, (2)), *long*.  
**lōnge** (**lange**) (§ 97, (2)), *long*;  
**lōnge on dæg**, *late in the day*.

**lufan**, see **lufu**  
**lufian** (§ 131), *to love*  
**lufu**, *f*, *love*, dative singular =  
**lufan** (weak form).  
**lytel** (**litel**) (§ 96, (3)), *little*,  
*small*.

**M.**

**mā**, see **micle**.  
**mæg**, *m*, *kinsman*; dative plural  
= **māgum** (§ 27, (2)).  
**mæge**, see **magan**  
**mægð**, *f*, *tribe*.  
**mægðhād**, *m.*, *maidenhood*, *vir-*  
*ginity*.  
**mæst**, see **micel**.  
**magan** (§ 137), *to be able*, *may*.  
**māgum**, see **mæg**.  
**man**, see **mōn**.  
**māra**, see **micel**.  
**meahte**, see **magan**.  
**mearc**, *f.*, *boundary*.  
**mearh**, *m*, *horse*.  
**mearð**, *m*, *marten*.  
**meðu**, *m.*, *mead*.  
**męn**, see **mōn**.  
**meolc**, *f.*, *milk*.  
**Mēore**, *Möre* (in Sweden).  
**męre**, *m*, *lake*, *meer*, *sea*  
**Meretūn**, *m.*, *Merton* (in Surrey).  
**micel** (§ 96, (3)), *great*, *large*.  
**micle** (adverb), *much*  
**miclum** (§ 93, (4)), *greatly*.  
**mid** (§ 94, (1)), *with*, *among*,  
*therewith*.  
**middangeard**, *m*, *world*  
**middeward**, *midward*, *toward*  
*the middle*  
**Mierce**, *m.*, plural, *Mercians*.  
**mihte**, see **magan**  
**mīl**, *f*, *mile*.  
**mildheortnes**, *f.*, *mercy*

**mīn** (§ 76), *my*, *mine*.  
**mōd**, *n*, *mind*, *mood*  
**mōdor**, *f*, *mother*.  
**mōn** (**mōnn**, **man**, **mann**) (§ 68),  
*man*, *one*, *person*, *they* (§ 70,  
Note)  
**mōna**, *m.*, *moon*.  
**mōnað** (§ 68), Note 1), *month*;  
dative singular = **mōnðe**.  
**mōnig** (**manig**, **mænig**), *many*  
**mōnðe**, see **mōnað**.  
**mōr**, *m*, *moor*  
**morgen**, *m*, *morning*  
**mōtan** (§ 137), *may*, *must*.  
**munuc**, *m*, *monk*.  
**mūð**, *m.*, *mouth*.  
**mýre**, *f.*, *mare*.

**N.**

**nā**, *not*; **nā ne**, *not* (emphatic),  
*not at all*.  
**nabban** (p 32, Note), *not to have*.  
**nædre**, *f.*, *serpent*, *adder*.  
**næfde**, see **nabban**  
**nænig** (§ 77), *no one*, *none*.  
**nære**, see **bēon** (§ 40, Note 2).  
**næs**, see **bēon** (§ 40, Note 2)  
**nama**, see **nōma**.  
**nāmon**, see **niman**  
**ne**, *not*  
**nē**, *nor*; **nē . . . nē**, *neither . . .*  
*nor*  
**nēah** (§ 96, (4)), *near*.  
**nēar** (adverb), *nearly*, *almost*  
**nīehst**, see **nēah**  
**nīgontiene**, *nineteen*.  
**niht** (§ 68, Note 1), *night*.  
**niman** (§ 114), *to take*, *gain*.  
**nis**, see **bēon** (§ 40, Note 2).  
**nīwe**, *new*  
**nōma**, *m.*, *name*.

**norð** (§ 97, (1)), *north, in the north, northwards*  
**norðan** (§ 93), (5)), *from the north; be norðan, see be.*  
**norðeward**, *northward.*  
**Norðhymbre**, m. plural, *Northumbrians*  
**Norðmanna**, see **Norðmōn**.  
**Norðmēn**, see **Norðmōn**  
**norðmest**, see **norð**.  
**Norðmōn** (-man) (68, (1)), *Norwegian*  
**norðor**, see **norð**  
**norðryhte**, *northward.*  
**norðward**, *northward.*  
**Norðweg**, *Norway.*  
**nū**, *now.*  
**nȳhst** (nīehst), see **nēah**.  
**nysse**, see **nytan**  
**nyste**, see **nytan**.  
**nytan** (nitan < ne witan, § 136), *not to know; 3d singular preterit = nysse, nyste.*

**O**

**of** (§ 94, (1)), *of, from, concerning*  
**ofer** (§ 94, (2)), *over, across, after.*  
**ofer** (adverb), *over, across*  
**oferfēran** (§ 126), *to go over, traverse.*  
**oferfrēosan** (§ 109), *to freeze over*  
**oferfrozen**, see **oferfrēosan**.  
**ofslægen**, see **ofslēan**  
**ofslēan** (§ 118), *to slay.*  
**ofslōge**, see **ofslēan**.  
**on** (§ 94, (3)), *in, into, on, against, to, among, during; on fif oððe syx, into five or six parts.*  
**onð** (and), *and*

**onfehtan** (§ 110), *to fight.*  
**ongēan** (adverb), *just across, opposite*  
**onginnan** (§ 110), *to begin.*  
**onrīdan** (§ 102), *to ride against, make a raid on,*  
**oð** (§ 94, (2)), *until, as far as; oð ðe, until.*  
**oððer**, *other, second; oððer . . . oððer, the one . . . the other.*  
**oððe**, *or, oððe . . . oððe, either . . . or*

**P.**

**plega**, m., *play, festivity.*  
**port**, m., *port* [portus].

**R.**

**rād**, f, *raid.*  
**Rēadingas**, m., plural, *Reading* (in Berkshire).  
**rīce**, *rich, powerful, aristocratic.*  
**rīce**, n., *kingdom.*  
**rīcsian** (§ 130), *to rule.*  
**rīdan** (§ 102), *to ride*  
**rīman** (§ 126), *to count.*  
**rōd**, f, *cross, rood; rōde tācen, the sign of the cross*  
**Rōmware**, m, plural, *Romans*  
**ryhtnorðanwind**, m., *direct north wind.*

**S.**

**sæ**, f., *sea.*  
**sæd**, n., *seed*  
**sæde**, see **secgan**.  
**sam . . . sam**, *whether . . . or.*  
**samod**, see **sōmod**  
**sanct**, m., f, *saint; genitive singular = sanctæ (fem.), sancti (masc) [sanctus].*  
**sāwan** (§ 117), *to sow.*

**sāwol**, f, *soul*; genitive singular = **sāwle** (§ 39, Note).  
**sceal**, see **sculan**.  
**scēap**, n., *sheep*  
**scēawung**, f., *seeing*.  
**sceolde**, see **sculan**.  
**scēowyrhta**, m., *shoe-maker*.  
**scēōðan** (§ 116), *to injure, scathe* (with dative).  
**scieppan** (§ 116), *to create*.  
**Scieppend**, m, *Creator*.  
**scīnan** (§ 102), *to shine*.  
**scip** (**scyp**), n., *ship*.  
**sciprāp**, m, *ship-rope, cable*.  
**scīr**, f, *shire, district*.  
**Sciringeshēal**, m., *Sciringeskeal* (in Norway).  
**Scōnēg**, f, *Skaane* (southern district of the Scandinavian peninsula).  
**sculan** (§ 136; § 137, Note 2), *shall, have to, ought*.  
**scyp**, see **scip**.  
**sē, sēo, ðæt** (§ 28; § 28, Note 3), *the; that; he, she, it, who, which, that; ðæs, from then, afterwards; ðæs ðe* (p. 110, l 2), *with what, ðy . . ðæt*, (p. 110, ll 7-8), *for this reason . . because*.  
**Seaxe**, m, plural, *Saxons, Saxony*.  
**sēcan** (§ 128), *to seek, visit*  
**secg**, m., *man, warrior*.  
**secgan** (§ 132), *to say, tell*.  
**segel**, m, n., *sail*; dative singular = **segle**.  
**seglian** (§ 130), *to sail*.  
**self** (**sylf**), *self, himself* (declined as strong or weak adjective).  
**sęndan** (§ 127), *to send*.  
**sēo**, see **sē**

**seofon** (**syfan**), *seven*.  
**seolh**, m, *seal*; genitive singular = **sēoles** (§ 27, (3)).  
**sīe**, see **bēon**  
**siex**, *six*, **syxa** (**siexa**) **sum**, see **sum**  
**siextig**, *sixty*  
**sige**, m, *victory*.  
**siglan** (§ 127), *to sail*.  
**Sillende**, *Zealand*  
**sind**, **sint**, **sindon**, see **bēon**.  
**singan** (§ 110), *to sing*.  
**siððan**, *after that, afterwards, after*.  
**slēan** (§ 118), *to slay*.  
**smæl**, *narrow*  
**smalost**, see **smæl**  
**sōhte**, see **sēcan**.  
**somod** (**samod**), *together*.  
**sōð**, *true*.  
**sōð**, n., *truth*  
**sōðlice**, *truly*.  
**spēd**, f, *possessions, success, riches* [speed].  
**spēdig**, *rich, prosperous*.  
**spell**, n, *story, tale*.  
**spere**, n, *spear*  
**spor**, n, *track*  
**spræc**, f, *speech, language*.  
**sprecan** (§ 115), *to speak*  
**stælhērān**, m., *decoy-reindeer*  
**stælwierðe**, *serviceable*.  
**stæð**, n., *shore*.  
**stān**, m., *stone, rock*  
**standan**, see **stōndan**.  
**stęde**, m, *place*.  
**stelan** (§ 114), *to steal*.  
**stęnt**, see **stōndan**.  
**stēorbord**, n., *starboard, right side of a ship*  
**stilnes**, f., *stillness, quiet*.  
**stōndan** (§ 116), *to stand*.

**stōw**, f, *place*.

**strang**, see **strōng**

**strōng** (§ 96, (2)), *strong*.

**styccemælum**, *here and there*.

**sum** (§ 91, Note 2), *some, certain, a certain one; hē syxa sum, he with five others*.

**sumera**, see **sumor**.

**sumor**, m., *summer*, dative singular = **sumera**

**sumorlida**, m., *summer-army*.

**sunne**, f., *sun*.

**sunu**, m, *son*.

**sūð**, *south, southwards*

**sūðan** (§ 93, (5)), *from the south, be sūðan, south of* (§ 94, (4)).

**sūðeward**, *southward*

**sūðryhte**, *southward*.

**swā**, *so, as; swā swā, just as, as far as; swā . . . swā, the . . . the, as . . . as*

**Swēoland**, n., *Sweden*.

**Swēom**, m., dative plural, *the Swedes*

**swift** (**swyft**), *swift*.

**swīn** (**swȳn**), n., *swine, hog*.

**swīðe** (**swȳðe**), *very*

**swīðost**, *chiefly, almost*.

**swuster** (§ 68, (2)), f., *sister*.

**swyft**, see **swift**

**swȳn**, see **swīn**

**swȳðe**, see **swīðe**.

**symle**, *always*.

**synd**, see **bēon**.

**syððan**, see **siððan**

**syx**, see **siex**.

**syxtig**, see **siextig**.

## T.

**tācen**, n., *sign, token; dative singular = tācne* (§ 33, Note).

**tæcan** (§ 128), *to teach*.

**tam**, *tame*

**Temes**, f., *the Thames*.

**Terfinna**, m., genitive plural, *the Terfins*.

**tēð**, see **tōð**.

**tīen** (**tȳn**), *ten*

**til**, *good*.

**tīma**, m, *time*.

**tō** (§ 94, (1)), *to, for*.

**tōðælan** (§ 126), *to divide*.

**tōemnes** (**tō emnes**) (§ 94, (4)), *along, alongside*.

**tōforan** (§ 94, (1)), *before*.

**tōhopa**, m, *hope*.

**tōlicgan** (§ 115, Note 2), *to separate, lie between; 3d singular indicative = tōlið.*

**tōlið**, see **tōlicgan**.

**tōð** (§ 68, (1)), m, *tooth*.

**tōward** (§ 94, (1)), *toward*

**trēownes**, f., *trust*.

**Trūsō**, *Drausen* (a city on the Drausensea).

**tūn**, m., *town, village*.

**tunge**, f, *tongue*.

**tungol**, n, *star*.

**twā**, see **twēgen**

**twēgen** (§ 89), *two, twain*.

**twēntig**, *twenty*.

**tȳn**, see **tīen**

## Ð

**ðā**, *then, when; ðā . . . ðā, when . . . then*

**ðā**, see **sē**

**ðær**, *there, where*.

**ðæs**, *afterwards* (see **sē**).

**ðæt**, *that*

**ðās**, see **ðēs**

**ðe** (§ 75), *who, whom, which, that*.

**ðēah**, *though, however*  
**ðearf**, *f, need, benefit.*  
**ðēaw**, *m, habit, custom.*  
**ðegn** (**ðegen**), *m., servant, thane,*  
*warrior.*

**ðēowra**, *m, servant.*

**ðēs** (§ 73), *this*

**ðider**, *thither.*

**ðiderweard**, *thitherward.*

**ðin** (§ 76), *thine.*

**ðing**, *n, thing.*

**ðis**, see **ðēs**.

**ðissum**, see **ðēs**.

**ðqnan**, *thence.*

**ðone**, see **sē**.

**ðonne**, *than, then, when; ðonne*  
*. . . ðonne, when . . . then.*

**ðrēora**, see **ðrīe**.

**ðričda**, *third.*

**ðrīe** (**ðrȳ**) (§ 89), *three.*

**ðrīm**, see **ðrīe**.

**ðrītīg**, *thirty.*

**ðrȳ**, see **ðrīe**.

**ðū** (§ 72), *thou*

**ðūhte**, see **ðyncan**.

**ðurh** (§ 94, (2)), *through.*

**ðus**, *thus.*

**ðūsēnd**, *thousand*

**ðȳ**, see **sē**

**ðyder**, see **ðider**.

**ðyncan** (§ 128), *to seem, appear*  
*(impersonal); mē ðyncō, me-*  
*thinks, it seems to me; him*  
*ðūhte, it seemed to him.*

### U.

**unbeboht**, *unsold* [**bebycgan** =  
*to sell*].

**unforbærned**, *unburned.*

**unfrið**, *m., hostility*

**ungefōge**, *excessively.*

**ungesewenlic**, *invisible* [past  
 participle of **sēon** + **lic**]

**unrihtwīsnes**, *f., unrighteous-*  
*ness.*

**unspēdig**, *poor.*

**ūp** (**ūpp**), *up.*

**ūre** (§ 76), *our.*

**ūt**, *out.*

**ūtan**, *from without, outside.*

**uton**, *let us* (with infinitive).

### W.

**wæl**, *n., slaughter.*

**wæslīht**, *m., slaughter.*

**wælstōw**, *f., battle-field; wæl-*  
*stōwe gewald, possession of*  
*the battle-field.*

**wāpen**, *n., weapon.*

**wāre**, see **bēon**.

**wæs**, see **bēon**

**wæter**, *n., water*

**wealdend**, *m., wielder, lord,*  
*ruler.*

**wealh**, *m., foreigner, Welshman.*

**weall**, *m, wall*

**weardō**, see **weorðan**.

**weaxan** (§ 117), *to grow, wax*

**weg**, *m., way; hys wegēs*, see  
 § 93, (3).

**wel** (§ 97, (2)), *well.*

**węndan** (§ 127), *to change,*  
*translate* [**wīndan**].

**Weonodland** (**Weonoðland**),  
*n., Wendland*

**weorpan** (§ 110), *to throw.*

**weorðan** (§ 110), *to be, become.*

**werod**, *n., army*

**wesan**, see **bēon**.

**Wesseaxe**, *m, plural, West Sax-*  
*ons; genitive plural = Wes-*  
*seaxna.*



**west**, *west, westward*  
**westanwind**, m, *west wind*  
**wēste**, *waste*.  
**wēsten**, n, *waste, desert*  
**Westseā**, f., *West sea* (west of Norway).  
**Westseaxe**, m, plural, *West Saxons, Wessex*  
**wīcian** (§ 130), *to dwell, lodge, sojourn*  
**wīdsāe**, f, *open sea*  
**wīf**, n, *wife, woman*.  
**wild**, *wild*  
**wildor**, n, *wild beast, reindeer*; dative plural = **wildrum** (§ 33, Note)  
**willā**, m, *will*  
**willan** (§ 134; § 137, Note 3), *to will, intend*  
**Wiltūn**, m., *Wilton* (in Wiltshire)  
**wīn**, n, *wine*.  
**Wīnburne**, f, *Wimborne* (in Dorsetshire)  
**wind**, m, *wind*  
**wine**, m, *friend*  
**Winedas**, m., plural, *the Wends, the Wend country*  
**wīngeard**, m., *vineyard*  
**winter**, m, *winter*; dative singular = **wintra**  
**wīs**, *wise*  
**wīsdōm**, m., *wisdom*.  
**Wisle**, f, *the Vistula*  
**Wislemūða**, m, *the mouth of the Vistula*.  
**wisse**, see **witan**

**witan** (§ 136), *to know*  
**wīte**, n., *punishment*  
**Witland**, n, *Witland* (in Prussia)  
**wið** (§ 94, (3)), *against, toward*, **wið ēastan and wið ūpp on emnlange ðæm bȳnum lande**, *toward the east, and upwards along the cultivated land*  
**wiðerwinna**, m, *adversary*.  
**wolde**, see **willan**.  
**word**, n., *word*.  
**woruld**, f, *world*; **tō worulde būtan æghwīlcum ende**, *world without end*  
**writan** (§ 102), *to write*.  
**wucu**, f., *week*  
**wudu**, m., *wood, forest*.  
**wuldor**, n, *glory*.  
**wulf**, m, *wolf*.  
**wund**, f., *wound*  
**wurdon**, see **weorðan**.  
**wylf**, f, *she wolf*  
**wyllað**, see **willan**  
**wyrc(e)an** (§ 128), *to work, make*.  
**wyrhta**, m., *worker, creator* [-wright].

## Y.

**ylca**, see **ilca**  
**ymbe** (**ymb**) (§ 94, (2)), *about, around*, **ðæs ymb iiii niht**, *about four nights afterwards*.  
**yrnan**, see **iernan**.  
**yteren**, *of an otter* [**otor**].



## II. GLOSSARY.

### MODERN ENGLISH—OLD ENGLISH.

#### A

**a**, *ān* (§ 77).  
**abide**, *bīdan* (§ 102), *ābīdan*.  
**about**, *be* (§ 94, (1)), *ymbe* (§ 94, (2)); **to write about**, *writan be*; **to speak about** (= of), *sprecan ymbe*, **about two days afterwards**, *ðæs ymbe twēgen dagas*  
**adder**, *nādre* (§ 64).  
**afterwards**, *ðæs* (§ 93, (3))  
**against**, *wið* (§ 94, (3)), *on* (§ 94, (3)).  
**Alfred**, *Ælfred* (§ 26).  
**all**, *eall* (§ 80).  
**also**, *ēac*.  
**although**, *ðēah* (§ 105, 2)  
**always**, *ā*; *ealne weg* (§ 98, (1)).  
**am**, *eom* (§ 40).  
**an**, see **a**.  
**and**, *and* (*and*).  
**angel**, *engel* (§ 26).  
**animal**, *dēor* (§ 32)  
**are**, *sind*, *sint*, *sindon* (§ 40).  
**army**, *werod* (§ 32); **Danish army**, *hære* (§ 26); **English army**, *fierd* (§ 38).  
**art**, *eart* (§ 40).  
**Ashdown**, *Æscesdūn* (§ 38)

**ask**, *biddan* (§ 65, Note 3; § 115, Note 2).  
**away**, *aweg*.

#### B.

**battle-field**, *wælstōw* (§ 38).  
**be**, *bēon* (§ 40); **not to be**, see § 40, Note 2.  
**bear**, *beran* (§ 114).  
**because**, *for ðæm* (*ðe*), *for ðon* (*ðe*).  
**become**, *weorðan* (§ 110).  
**before** (temporal conjunction), *ær*, *ær ðæm ðe* (§ 105, 2).  
**begin**, *onginnan* (§ 107, (1); § 110).  
**belong to**, *belimpan tō* + dative (§ 110)  
**best**, see **good**.  
**better**, see **good**.  
**bind**, *bindan* (§ 110).  
**bird**, *fugol* (§ 26)  
**bite**, *bītan* (§ 102).  
**body**, *lic* (§ 32).  
**bone**, *bān* (§ 32).  
**book**, *bōc* (§ 68).  
**both . . . and**, *węðer ge . . . ge*.  
**boundary**, *mearc* (§ 38)  
**boy**, *enapa* (§ 64).

**break**, *brēotan* (§ 109), *brecan*,  
*ābrecan* (§ 114)  
**brother**, *brōðor* (§ 68, (2)).  
**but**, *ac*  
**by**, *frōm* (*fram*) (§ 94, (1));  
 § 141, Note 1).

## C

**Cædmon**, *Cædmōn* (§ 68, (1)).  
**call**, *hātan* (§ 117, (1))  
**cease**, *cease from*, *geswīcan*  
 (§ 102)  
**child**, *bearn* (§ 32).  
**choose**, *cēosan* (§ 109).  
**Christ**, *Crīst* (§ 26)  
**church**, *cirice* (§ 64).  
**come**, *cuman* (§ 114)  
**comfort**, *frōfor* (§ 38).  
**companion**, *gefēra* (§ 64).  
**consolation**, *frōfor* (§ 38)  
**create**, *gescieppan* (§ 116).

## D.

**Danes**, *Dene* (§ 47)  
**day**, *dæg* (§ 26)  
**dead**, *dēad* (§ 80)  
**dear** (= beloved), *lēof* (§ 80).  
**deed**, *dēd* (§ 38)  
**die**, *cwelan* (§ 114)  
**division** (of troops), *gefylce*  
 (§ 32), *getruma* (§ 64)  
**do**, *dōn* (§ 134)  
**door**, *dor* (§ 32), *duru* (§ 52)  
**drink**, *drincan* (§ 110)  
**during**, *on* (§ 94, (3)) See also  
 § 98  
**dwell in**, *būan on* (§ 126, Note  
 2).

## E.

**earl**, *eorl* (§ 26)  
**endure**, *drēogan* (§ 109)  
**England**, *Ēnglaland* (§ 32).  
**enjoy**, *brūcan* (§ 62, Note 1;  
 § 109, Note 1).  
**every**, *ēlc* (§ 77).  
**eye**, *ēage* (§ 64).

## F.

**father**, *fæder* (§ 68, (2)).  
**field**, *feld* (§ 51)  
**fight**, *feohtan*, *gefeohtan* (§ 110)  
**find**, *findan* (§ 110).  
**finger**, *finger* (§ 26)  
**fire**, *fȳr* (§ 32)  
**fisherman**, *fiscere* (§ 26)  
**foreigner**, *wealh* (§ 26).  
**freedom**, *frēodōm* (§ 26)  
**friend**, *wine* (§ 45), *frēond* (§ 68,  
 (3)).  
**friendship**, *frēondscipe* (§ 45)  
**full**, *full* (with genitive) (§ 80)

## G

**gain the victory**, *sige habban*,  
*sige niman*  
**gift**, *giefu* (§ 38)  
**give**, *giefan* (with dative of in-  
 direct object) (§ 115)  
**glad**, *glæd* (§ 81)  
**glove**, *glōf* (§ 38)  
**go**, *gān* (§ 134), *faran* (§ 116).  
**God**, *God* (§ 26).  
**good**, *gōd* (§ 80)

## H.

**Halgoland**, *Hālgoland* (§ 32).  
**hall**, *heall* (§ 38).

hand, *hƿnd* (§ 52).  
 hard, *heard* (§ 80)  
 have, *habban* (§ 34); not to  
     have, *nabban* (p 32, Note)  
 he, *hē* (§ 53).  
 head, *hēafod* (§ 32)  
 hear, *hīeran* (§ 126)  
 heaven, *heofon* (§ 26)  
 help, *helpan* (with dative) (§ 110)  
 herdsman, *hierde* (§ 26).  
 here, *hēr*  
 hither, *hider*.  
 hold, *heatdan* (§ 117, (2))  
 holy, *hālig* (§ 82).  
 horse, *mearh* (§ 26), *hors* (§ 32)  
 house, *hūs* (§ 32)

I

I, *ic* (§ 72)  
 in, *on* (§ 94, (3))  
 indeed, *sōðlice*  
 injure, *scēððan* (with dative)  
     (§ 116).  
 it, *hit* (§ 53).

K.

king, *cyning* (§ 26).  
 kingdom, *rīce* (§ 32), *cynerīce*  
     (§ 32)

L.

land, *lond* (§ 32).  
 language, *spræc* (§ 38), *geðēode*  
     (§ 32).  
 large, *micel* (§ 82).  
 leisure, *āmetta* (§ 64).  
 let us, *uton* (with infinitive)  
 limb, *lim* (§ 32).  
 little, *lytel* (§ 82).  
 live in, *būan on* (§ 126, Note 2).  
 lord, *hlāford* (§ 26).

love, *lufian* (§ 131)  
 love (noun), *lufu* (§ 38).

M.

make, *wyrcean* (§ 128).  
 man, *sƿcg* (§ 26), *mƿn* (§ 68, (1)).  
 many, *mƿnig* (§ 82)  
 mare, *mýre* (§ 64)  
 mead, *medu* (§ 51)  
 Mercians, *Mierce* (§ 47).  
 milk, *meolc* (§ 38)  
 month, *mōnað* (§ 68, (1), Note 1)  
 mouth, *mūð* (§ 26).  
 much, *micel* (§ 96, (3)), *micle*  
     (§ 97, (2)).  
 murderer, *bƿna* (§ 64).  
 my, *mīn* (§ 76).

N

natives, *londlēode* (§ 47).  
 nephew, *nefa* (§ 64).  
 new, *nīwe* (§ 82)  
 Northumbrians, *Norðymbre*  
     (§ 47).  
 not, *ne*

O

of, see about  
 on, *on* (§ 94, (3)), *ofer* (§ 94,  
     (2)).  
 one, *ān* (§ 89); the one . .  
     the other, *ōðer* . . *ōðer*.  
 other, *ōðer* (§ 77)  
 our, *ūre* (§ 76).  
 ox, *oxa* (§ 64).

P.

place, *stōw* (§ 38).  
 plundering, *hƿrgung* (§ 38).

poor, *earn* (§ 80), *unspēdig* (§ 82).  
 prosperous, *spēdig* (§ 82).

## Q.

queen, *cwēn* (§ 49).

## R.

reindeer, *hrān* (§ 26).  
 remain, *bīdan* (§ 102), *ābīdan*.  
 retain possession of the battle-  
 field, *āgan wælstōwe gewald*.  
 rich, *rīce* (§ 82), *spēdig* (§ 82)  
 ride, *rīdan* (§ 102).

## S.

say, *cweðan* (§ 115), *seçgan*  
 (§ 133).  
 scribe, *bōcere* (§ 26).  
 seal, *seolh* (§ 26).  
 see, *sēon* (§ 118), *gesēon*  
 serpent, *nēdre* (§ 64).  
 servant, *ðeowa* (§ 64), *ðegn* (§ 26)  
 shall, *sculan* (§ 136; § 137,  
 Note 2).  
 she, *hēo* (§ 53)  
 shepherd, *hierde* (§ 26)  
 ship, *scip* (§ 32)  
 shire, *scīr* (§ 38)  
 shoemaker, *scēowyrhta* (§ 64).  
 side, on both sides, *on gehwæðre*  
*hond*  
 six, *six* (§ 90)  
 slaughter, *wæl* (§ 32), *wælsliht*  
 (§ 45)  
 small, *lȳtel* (§ 82).  
 son, *sunu* (§ 51).  
 soul, *sāwol* (§ 38).  
 speak, *sprecan* (§ 115).  
 spear, *gār* (§ 26), *spere* (§ 32).

stand, *stāndan* (§ 116).  
 stone, *stān* (§ 26).  
 stranger, *wealh* (§ 26), *cuma*  
 (§ 64).  
 suffer, *drēogan* (§ 109).  
 sun, *sunne* (§ 64).  
 swift, *swift* (§ 80).

## T.

take, *niman* (§ 110).  
 than, *ðonne* (§ 96, (6)).  
 thane, *ðegn* (§ 26).  
 that (conjunction), *ðæt*.  
 that (demonstrative), *sē*, *sēo*, *ðæt*  
 (§ 28)  
 that (relative), *ðe* (§ 75).  
 the, *sē*, *sēo*, *ðæt* (§ 28).  
 then, *ðā*, *ðonne*.  
 these, see *this*.  
 they, *hīe* (§ 53).  
 thing, *ðing* (§ 32).  
 thirty, *ðrītīg*.  
 this, *ðēs*, *ðeos*, *ðis* (§ 73).  
 those, see *that* (demonstrative)  
 thou, *ðū* (§ 72).  
 though, *ðeah* (§ 105, 2).  
 three, *ðrīe* (§ 89).  
 throne, ascend the throne, *tō*  
*rīce fōn*  
 throw, *weorpan* (§ 110).  
 to, *tō* (§ 94, (1)).  
 tongue, *tunge* (§ 64).  
 track, *spor* (§ 32).  
 true, *sōð* (§ 80).  
 truly, *sōðlice*.  
 two, *twēgen* (§ 89).

## V

very, *swīðe*.  
 vessel, *fæt* (§ 32)  
 victory, *sige* (§ 45).

## W

**wall**, *weall* (§ 26)  
**warrior**, *secg* (§ 26), *eorl* (§ 26).  
**way**, *weg* (§ 26).  
**weapon**, *wæpen* (§ 32).  
**well**, *wel* (§ 97, (2))  
**Welshman**, *Wealk* (§ 26).  
**went**, see **go**  
**westward**, *west*, *westrihte*.  
**whale**, *hwæl* (§ 26)  
**what?** *hwæt* (§ 74).  
**when**, *ðā*, *ðonne*.  
**where?** *hwær*.  
**which**, *ðe* (§ 75).  
**who?** *hwā* (§ 74).  
**who** (relative), *ðe* (§ 75)  
**whosoever**, *swā hwā swā* (§ 77, Note).  
**will**, *willan* (§ 134; § 137, Note 3).  
**Wilton**, *Wiltūn* (§ 26)  
**win**, see **gain**.

**wine**, *wīn* (§ 32)  
**wisdom**, *wisdōm* (§ 26).  
**wise**, *wīs* (§ 80).  
**with**, *mid* (§ 94, (1)); **to fight with** (= against), *gefeohtan wið* (§ 94, (3)).  
**withstand**, *wiðstōndan* (with dative) (§ 116).  
**wolf**, *wulf* (§ 26), *wylf* (§ 38).  
**woman**, *wīf* (§ 32).  
**word**, *word* (§ 32)  
**worm**, *wyrm* (§ 45).

## Y.

**ye**, *gē* (§ 72).  
**year**, *gēar* (§ 32).  
**yoke**, *geoc* (§ 32).  
**you**, *ðū* (singular), *gē* (plural) (§ 72).  
**your**, *ðīn* (singular), *ēower* (plural) (§ 76).

## Orations and Arguments

Edited by Professor C B BRADLEY, University of California. 12mo, cloth, 385 pages. Price, \$1 00

The following speeches are contained in the book: —

|  |                               |
|--|-------------------------------|
| BURKE:   | WEESTER:                      |
| On Conciliation with the Colonies, and Speech before the Electors at Bristol | The Reply to Hayne            |
| CHATHAM:   | MACAULAY:                     |
| On American Affairs  | On the Reform Bill of 1832    |
| ERSKINE:   | CALHOUN:                      |
| In the Stockdale Case  | On the Slaveiy Question       |
| LINCOLN:   | SEWARD:                       |
| The Gettysburg Address   | On the Irrepressible Conflict |

**I**N making this selection, the test applied to each speech was that it should be in itself memorable, attaining its distinction through the essential qualities of nobility and force of ideas, and that it should be, in topic, so related to the great thoughts, memories, or problems of our own time as to have for us still an inherent and vital interest.

The speeches thus chosen have been printed from the best available texts, without change, save that the spelling has been made uniform throughout, and that three of the speeches — those of Webster, Calhoun, and Seward — have been shortened somewhat by the omission of matters of merely temporal or local interest. The omitted portions have been summarized for the reader, whenever they bear upon the main argument.

The Notes aim to furnish the reader with whatever help is necessary to the proper appreciation of the speeches; to avoid bewildering him with mere subtleties and display of erudition; and to encourage in him habits of self-help and familiarity with sources of information.

A special feature of this part of the work is a sketch of the English Constitution and Government, intended as a general introduction to the English speeches.

The collection includes material enough to permit of a varied selection for the use of successive classes in the schools.



**Professor J M Hart**, *Cornell University*: Bradley's Orations and Arguments is a good book. I am glad to have it, and shall take pleasure in recommending its use. The thought of bringing together a few of the best speeches by the best Englishmen and Americans, in a volume of moderate size, is an excellent one. The selection is judicious, and as representative as the limits permit. The annotation seems to me to be sound. I am especially pleased with the general notes on the English Constitution and Government. They ought to clear up a good many puzzles and obscurities for the students.

**Professor T W Hunt**, *College of New Jersey, Princeton*: It is a book that will be of practical service in the sphere of argumentation and forensic address. The notes add much to its value.

**Professor J H Penniman**, *University of Pennsylvania*: It seems to be an excellent book, and will prove a great aid to teachers of rhetoric and composition. The literary side of oratory is prominently set forth by the selections chosen.

**Byron Groce**, *Boston Latin School*: It is a remarkably fine book; fine in selection, in editing, in print, paper, and form. I wish I might have copies for one of my classes. I long ago publicly urged that a larger selection of orations be given in our literature courses, which, though perhaps not too literary, certainly needed the variety such selections as these you publish will give.

**Wilson Fariand**, *Newark Academy, N J*: The book is admirable in every way — selection of speeches, annotation, and mechanical execution. The special excellence of the notes seems to me to be in their historical suggestiveness, and the special value of the book in its connecting literary and historical study.

**E. H Lewis**, *University of Chicago*: The principles on which these selections have been made are thoroughly sound. The notes are adequate, but not too full. The book is a most available and useful one.

**Professor Edward E. Hale, Jr**, *Iowa State University, Iowa City*: I have read the larger part of it with great pleasure. I think it will serve its purpose very well, for the selections are excellent, and so are the notes. The book supplies good material which cannot easily be found elsewhere in so compact a form, and which ought to be a great help to many teachers.

**Professor H N Snyder**, *Wofford College, Spartanburg, S C*: These judicious selections, and helpful and interesting notes, make an exceedingly useful book.

## Studies in English Composition

By HARRIET C. KEELER, High School, Cleveland, Ohio, and EMMA C DAVIS, Cleveland, Ohio. 12mo, cloth, 210 pages Price, 80 cents

THIS book is the outgrowth of experience in teaching composition, and the lessons which it contains have all borne the actual test of the class-room. Intended to meet the wants of those schools which have composition as a weekly exercise in their course of study, it contains an orderly succession of topics adapted to the age and development of high school pupils, together with such lessons in language and rhetoric as are of constant application in class exercises.

The authors believe that too much attention cannot be given to supplying young writers with good models, which not only indicate what is expected, and serve as an ideal toward which to work, but stimulate and encourage the learner in his first efforts. For this reason numerous examples of good writing have been given, and many more have been suggested.

The primal idea of the book is that the pupil learns to write by writing; and therefore that it is of more importance to get him to write than to prevent his making mistakes in writing. Consequently, the pupil is set to writing at the very outset; the idea of producing something is kept constantly uppermost, and the function of criticism is reserved until after something has been done which may be criticised.

**J. W. Stearns**, *Professor of Pedagogy, University of Wisconsin* It strikes me that the author of your "Studies in English Composition" touches the gravest defect in school composition work when she writes in her preface: "One may as well grasp a sea-anemone, and expect it to show its beauty, as ask a child to write from his own experience when he expects every sentence to be dislocated in order to be improved." In order to improve the beauty of the body, we drive out the soul in our extreme formal criticisms of school compositions. She has made a book which teaches children to write by getting them to write often and freely; and if used with the spirit which has presided over the making of it, it will prove a most effective instrument for the reform of school composition work.

**Albert G. Owen**, *Superintendent, Afton, Iowa*: It is an excellent text. I am highly pleased with it. The best of the kind I have yet seen.

---

## ***Introduction to Theme-Writing***

By J. B. FLETCHER, Harvard University, and Professor G. R. CARPENTER, Columbia College. 16mo, cloth, 136 pages Price, 60 cents

THE lectures that form the basis of this book were delivered by Mr. Fletcher before the Freshman class at Harvard College in the spring of 1893. These have been rearranged, with additional matter by Professor Carpenter. The result is a text-book for students who have completed the introductory course in rhetoric usually prescribed at the beginning of the Freshman year.

The fundamental idea of the book is that in practising any of the various kinds of composition the student must decide:—

1 Just what treatment will be most appropriate to the subject-matter in general.

2. What treatment will most clearly bring out his own individual ideas or impressions of this matter.

3 What treatment will make this subject most clear to the particular class of readers or hearers which he has in mind.

Letter-writing, Translation, Description, Criticism, Exposition, and Argument are each treated in a clear and concise manner, and exercises on each subject are freely introduced.

## ***Selections from Carlyle***

Edited by HENRY W. BOYNTON, Instructor in English in Phillips Academy, Andover, Mass. 12mo, cloth, 283 pages. Price, 75 cents.

THIS volume includes material adequate for the elementary study of Carlyle in his earliest and most fruitful period. It contains the Essays on Burns, on History, on Boswell's Life of Johnson, and selections from Heroes and Hero-Worship.

The Notes are planned in the main to give aid rather than information or opinion, and by frequent quotation of illustrative passages to make the author his own interpreter.

The Essay on Burns, with the Notes belonging to it, is reprinted to form one of the volumes of the Academy Classics Series, advertised on page 1 of this catalogue.

## DeQuincey's Essays on Style, Rhetoric, and Language

Edited by Professor FRED N SCOTT, University of Michigan 12mo,  
276 pages Price, 60 cents.

THE essays selected are those which deal directly with the theory of literature. The appendix contains such passages from DeQuincey's other writings as will be of most assistance to the student. The introduction and notes are intended to re-enforce, not to forestall, research.

## Principles of Success in Literature

By GEORGE HENRY LEWES Edited with Introduction and Notes by  
Professor FRED N SCOTT. 12mo, 159 pages Price, 50 cents

THE object of reprinting this admirable little treatise on literature is to make it available for classes in rhetoric and literary criticism. Scarcely any other work will be found so thoroughly sound in principles, and so suggestive and inspiring.

The value of the present edition is greatly increased by the excellent introduction by Professor Scott, and by a full index, which adds much to its convenience.

Professor O. B. Clarke, *Indiana University, Bloomington*: Your reprint of Lewes's articles on "The Principles of Success in Literature" puts another sharp and serviceable tool into the hands of the teacher and student of the art of composition. Professor Scott, as well as yourselves, deserves the thanks of all who care for truth and force in working.

## Spencer's Philosophy of Style <sup>AND</sup> Wright's Essay on Style

Edited by Professor FRED N SCOTT 12mo, 92 pages Price, 45 cents

THE plan has been followed of providing a biographical and critical introduction, an index, and a few notes, — the latter designed to provoke discussion or to furnish clues for further investigation.

## Paragraph-Writing

By Professor F N SCOTT, University of Michigan, and Professor J. V. DENNEY, Ohio State University 12mo, 304 pages Price, \$1 00

THE principles embodied in this work were developed and put in practice by its authors at the University of Michigan several years ago. Its aim is to make the paragraph the basis of a method of composition, and to present all the important facts of rhetoric in their application to it.

In Part I the nature and laws of the paragraph are presented; the structure and function of the isolated paragraph are discussed, and considerable space is devoted to related paragraphs; that is, those which are combined into essays.

Part II is a chapter on the theory of the paragraph intended for teachers and advanced students

Part III contains copious material for class work, selected paragraphs, suggestions to teachers, lists of subjects for compositions (about two thousand), and helpful references of many kinds

The Revised Edition contains a chapter on the Rhetoric of the Paragraph, in which will be found applications of the paragraph-idea to the sentence, and to the constituent parts of the sentence, so far as these demand especial notice. The new material thus provided supplies, in the form of principles and illustrations, as much additional theory as the student of Elementary Rhetoric needs to master and apply, in order to improve the details of his paragraphs in unity, clearness, and force

**Professor J. M. Hart**, *Cornell University*: The style of the writers is admirable for clearness and correctness. They have produced an uncommonly sensible text-book. For college work it will be hard to beat. I know of no other book at all comparable to it for freshman drill.

**Professor Charles Mills Gayley**, *University of California*: Paragraph-Writing is the best thing of its kind, — the only systematic and exhaustive effort to present a cardinal feature of rhetorical training to the educational world.

**The Dial**, *March*, 1894: Paragraph-Writing is one of the really practical books on English composition. A book that successfully illustrates the three articles of the rhetorician's creed, — theory, example, and practice.

## *From Milton to Tennyson*

Masterpieces of English Poetry Edited by L. DU PONT SYLE, University of California 12mo, cloth, 480 pages Price, \$1.00.

**I**N this work the editor has endeavored to bring together within the compass of a moderate-sized volume as much narrative, descriptive, and lyric verse as a student may reasonably be required to read critically for entrance to college. From the nineteen poets represented, only such masterpieces have been selected as are within the range of the understanding and the sympathy of the high school student. Each masterpiece is given complete, except for pedagogical reasons in the cases of Thomson, Cowper, Byron, and Browning. Exigencies of space have compelled the editor reluctantly to omit Scott from this volume. The copyright laws, of course, exclude American poets from the scope of this work.

The low price of the book, together with its strong and attractive binding, make it especially desirable for those teachers who read with their classes even a small part of the poems it contains.

**President D. S. Jordan, Leland Stanford, Jr., University, Cal.** I have received the copy of Mr. Syle's book, "From Milton to Tennyson," and have looked it over with a great deal of interest. It seems to be an excellent work for the purpose. The selections seem well adapted to high school use, and the notes are wisely chosen and well stated.

**Professor Henry A. Beers, Yale University:** The notes are helpful and suggestive. What is more, — and what is unusual in text-book annotations, — they are interesting and make very good reading; not at all school-masterish, but really literary in their taste and discernment of nice points.

**Professor Elmer E. Wentworth, Vassar College:** It is a most attractive book in appearance outward and inward, the selections satisfactory and just, the notes excellent. In schools where less time is given than in ours, no other book known to me, *me judice*, will be so good. I wish to commend the notes again.

**Wm. E. Griffis, Ithaca, N Y** The whole work shows independent research as well as refined taste and a repose of judgment that is admirable. The selected pieces are not overburdened with critical notes, while the suggestions for comparison and criticism, to be made by the student himself, are very valuable.

## Select Essays of Addison

With Macaulay's Essay on Addison. Edited by SAMUEL THURBER, 12mo, 320 pages; cloth, 80 cents; boards, 50 cents

THE purpose of this selection is to interest young students in Addison as a moral teacher, a painter of character, a humorist, and as a writer of elegant English. Hence the editor has aimed to bring together such papers from the *Spectator*, the *Tatler*, the *Guardian*, and the *Freeholder* as will prove most readable to youth of high school age, and at the same time give something like an adequate idea of the richness of Addison's vein. The De Coverley papers are of course all included. Papers describing eighteenth-century life and manners, especially such as best exhibit the writer in his mood of playful satire, have been drawn upon as peculiarly illustrating the Addisonian humor. The tales and allegories, as well as the graver moralizings, have due representation, and the beautiful *hymns* are all given.

**Professor Henry S Pancoast, Philadelphia:** I am delighted to find that you are continuing the work so well begun in the Macaulay. I read the Introduction with much interest, and with a fresh sense of the importance and value of the method of teaching you are working to advance.

**William C. Collar, Principal of Latin School, Roxbury, Mass:** I suppose the best thing I can say is that your book will go into our list of books to be read, and that it will have a permanent place in my school. I believe with all my heart in your principles of annotation, and think you are doing a great work for the schools.

## Macaulay's Essays on Milton and Addison

12mo, boards Price, 30 cents.

THESE are reprinted from Mr Thurber's *Select Essays of Macaulay* and *Select Essays of Addison*, without any change in the numbering of the pages. Strongly and attractively bound, and printed on good paper, this book forms the cheapest and best edition of these two essays for school use.

---

## *The Academy Series of English Classics*

---

Substantially bound in boards, and issued at a uniform price of 20 cents

THE works selected for this series are such as have gained a conspicuous and enduring place in literature; nothing is admitted either trivial in character or ephemeral in interest

Each volume is edited by a teacher of reputation, whose name is a guaranty of sound and judicious annotation

It is the aim of the Notes to furnish assistance only where it is absolutely needed, and, in general, to permit the author to be his own interpreter.

All the works in the Series (excepting Webster's *Reply to Hayne*) are printed without mutilation or abridgment.

Though in typography, in paper, and in mechanical execution, the books reach the highest standard, each volume, containing from 80 to 140 pages, is published at a uniform price of *twenty* cents

The following is a list of the books that have already appeared. Other volumes are in preparation, and will be announced in due time

|             |                                |                                   |
|-------------|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| ARNOLD      | Essays in Criticism            | Edited by Susan S. Sheridan       |
| BURKE       | Conciliation with the Colonies | Edited by Professor C. B. Bradley |
| WEBSTER     | Reply to Hayne                 | Edited by Professor C. B. Bradley |
| ADDISON     | De Coverley Papers             | Edited by Samuel Thurber          |
| CARLYLE     | Essay on Burns                 | Edited by Henry W. Boynton        |
| MACAULAY    | Essay on Addison               | Edited by Samuel Thurber          |
|             | Essay on Chatham               | Edited by Samuel Thurber          |
|             | Essay on Clive                 | Edited by Samuel Thurber          |
|             | Essay on Milton.               | Edited by Samuel Thurber          |
|             | Essay on Johnson               | Edited by Samuel Thurber          |
|             | Essay on Warren Hastings       | Edited by Samuel Thurber.         |
| SHAKESPEARE | Julius Caesar                  | Edited by Samuel Thurber          |
|             | Macbeth                        | Edited by Samuel Thurber          |